



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

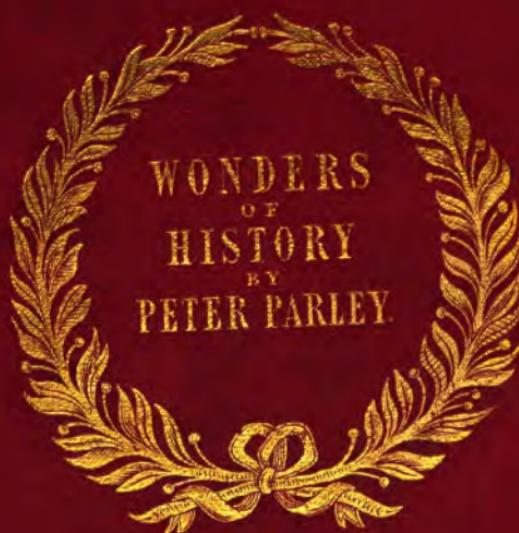
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

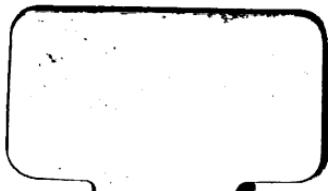
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



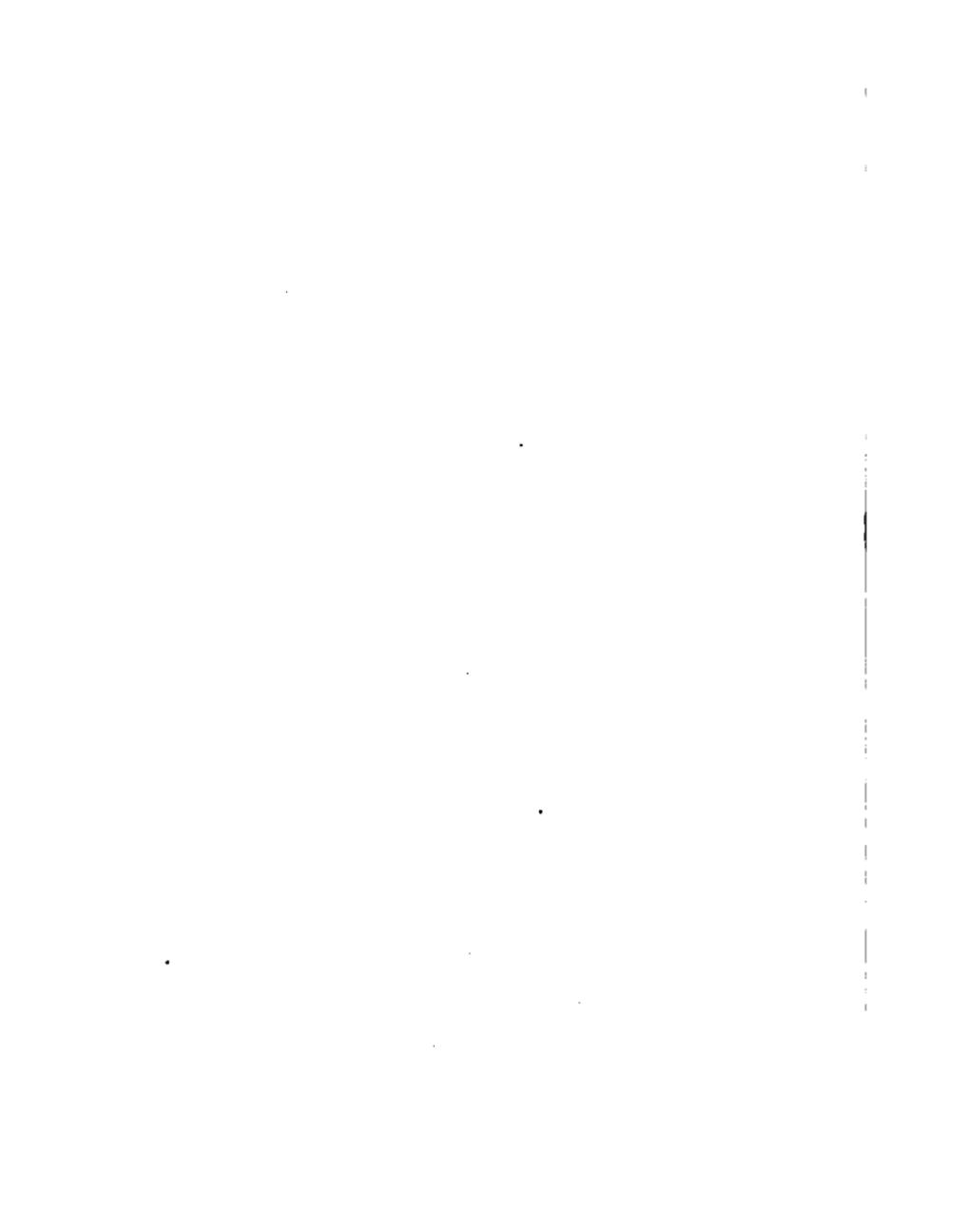
WONDERS  
OF  
HISTORY  
BY  
PETER PARLEY.

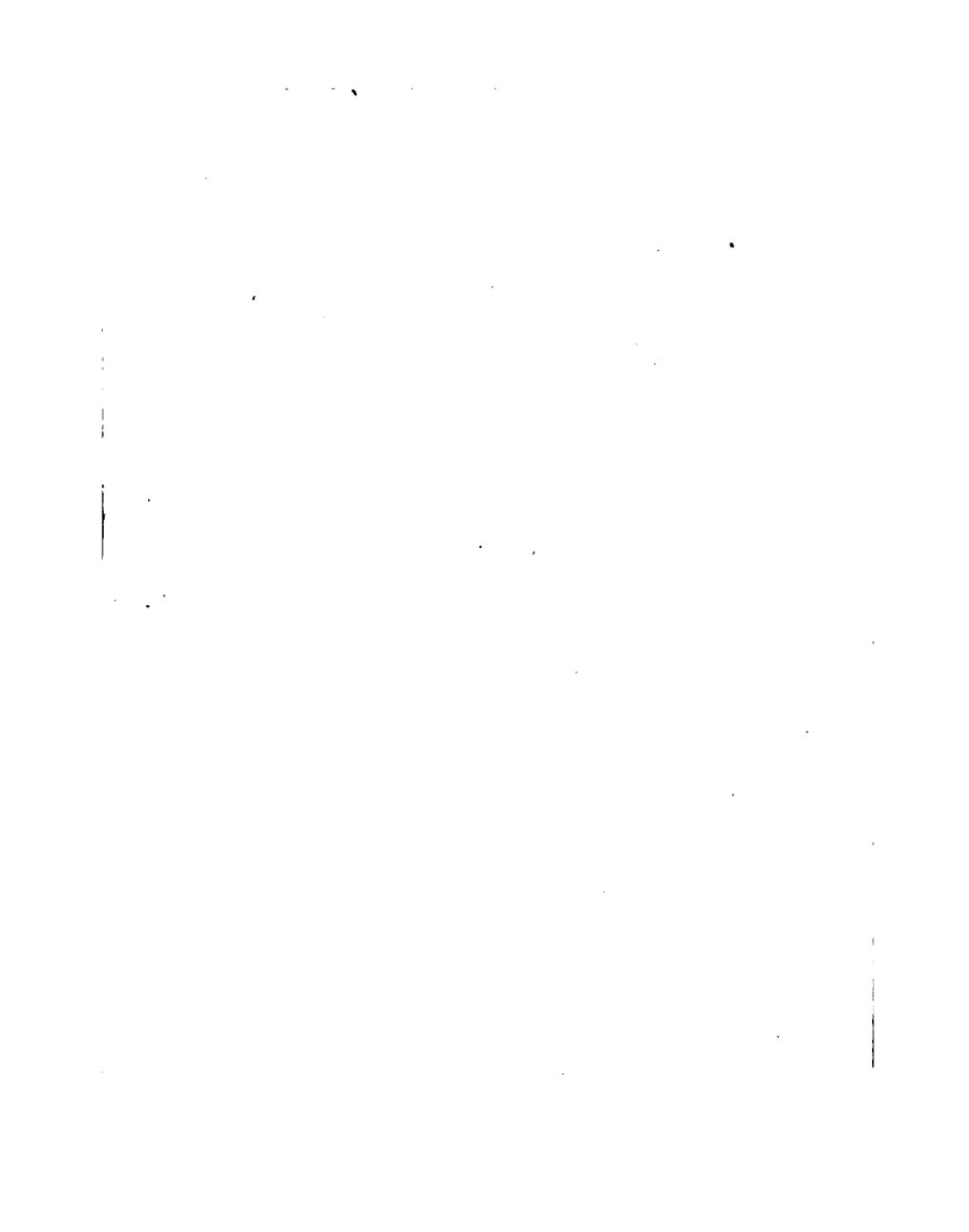
46.

926.



T







THE  
WONDER OF WISDOM

PETER PARLEY.

WONDERS OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

BY PETER PARLEY.

LONDON:

SHERWOOD, GELLER, AND VINE,

THAMES STREET ROW.

1836.

• 2 •



# THE WONDERS OF HISTORY

BY  
**PETER PARLEY.**



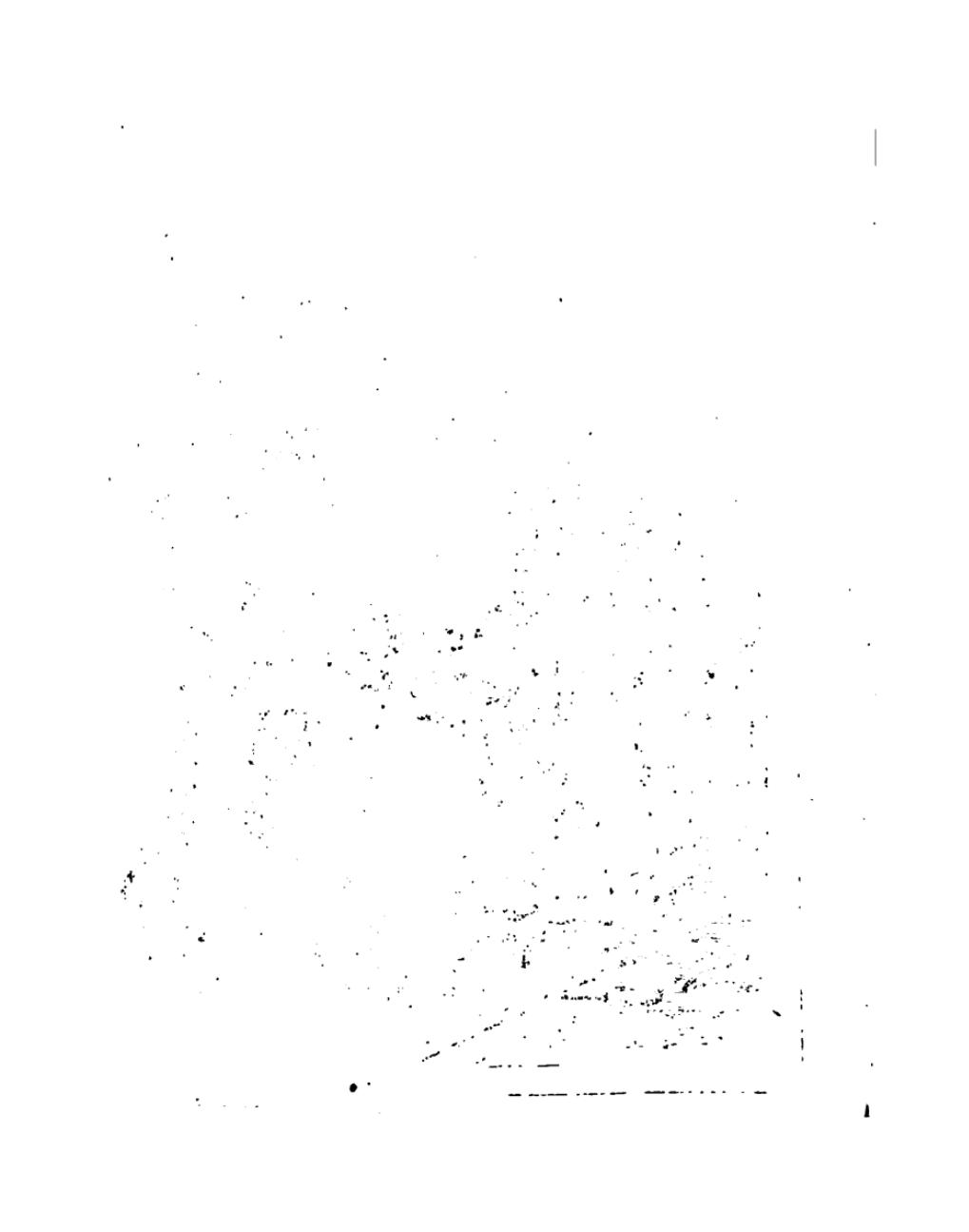
WONDERS OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

---

LONDON:  
SHERWOOD, GILBERT, AND PIPER,  
PATERNOSTER ROW.

1846.

• 26.



# THE WONDERS OF HISTORY

BY  
PETER PARLEY.



WONDERS OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

LONDON:  
SHERWOOD, GILBERT, AND PIPER,  
PATERNOSTER ROW.

1846.

926.



STEAM-PRESS OF W. H. COX,  
5, GREAT QUEEN STREET, LINCOLN'S-INN FIELDS.

TO

*My Dear Little Niece.*

AGNES STANLEY INNOCENTIA FERREIRA,

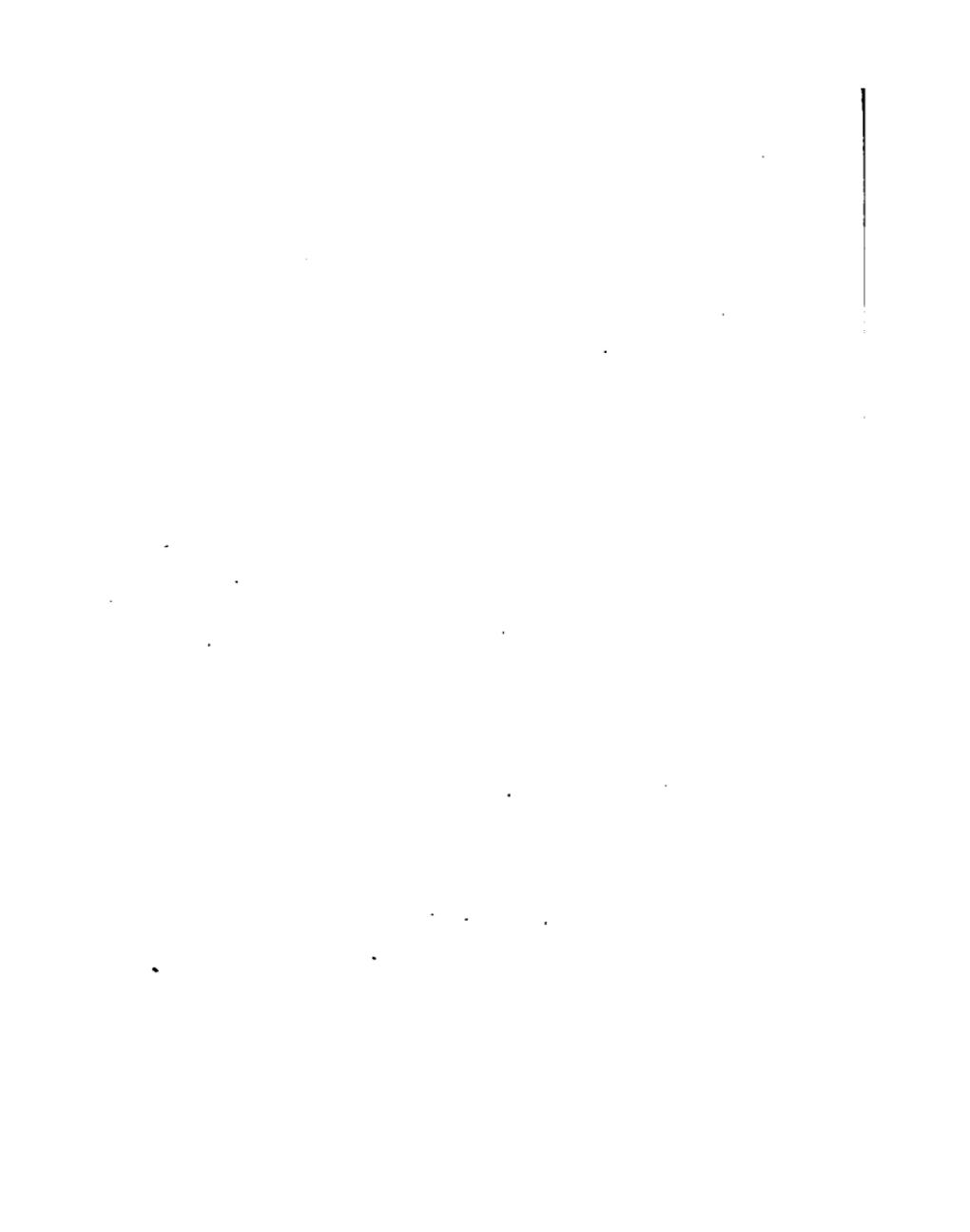
THIS VOLUME

IS

AFFECTIONATELY INSCRIBED

BY HER UNCLE,

THE AUTHOR.



## PREFACE.

---

THE favour with which PETER PARLEY'S ANNUAL and his other works have been received by the public, has induced him to publish an additional Christmas volume of a less ephemeral character than the "Annual," but, he trusts, equally attractive to the young.

History, like Nature, has its wonders, which have been exhibited in all countries and in all ages. To bring these wonders before the young is the object of this publication.

As in Nature the "starry firmament," the "mighty ocean," and the "lofty mountain," strike the mind with awe and sublimity, so in History do virtuous magnanimity, heroic deeds, and great enterprises.

The moral phenomena of the World's history are of more importance to us than the natural, because they impart a knowledge of human nature, and afford us EXAMPLES.

Examples are the sunlight of our moral system ; and the experience of the past, faithfully recorded, is calculated to bring improvement to the future, and exert a powerful influence on the present.

These examples are abundantly furnished in every page of History ; and in bringing some of them before the young, the author has introduced nothing which is not STRICTLY TRUE, and in agreement with the most faithful historical records. In the study of these, the reader will learn, that *truth* is often more wonderful than *fiction*.

In conclusion, the author has only to add, that he has been guided in the selection of his HISTORICAL FACTS with a due regard to the improvement of the young reader. He has kept in view not only the cultivation of the intellect, but the elevation of the moral feelings and affections, by bringing forward those subjects which are best calculated to inspire him with a love of virtue.

PETER PARLEY.

## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
I.—WONDERS OF BABYLON AND NINEVEH, AND DESTRUCTION OF NINEVEH .....	1
II.—CAPTURE OF BABYLON BY CYRUS .....	13
III.—TRIUMPH OF CYRUS .....	19
IV.—DESTRUCTION OF BABYLON BY DARIUS .....	23
V.—JERUSALEM.....	30
VI.—VICTORIES OF ALEXANDER .....	50
VII.—TALES OF THE CRUSADES:-	
PETER THE HERMIT .....	65
CAPTURE OF NICE .....	74
THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH .....	83
THE FALL OF JERUSALEM .....	99
LOSS OF THE CROSS .....	112
EXPLOITS OF RICHARD COEUR-DE-LION.....	194
VIII.—JENGHIS KHAN .....	142
IX.—JOAN OF ARC .....	163
X.—TAMERLANE THE GREAT .....	187
XI.—WILLIAM TELL, THE DELIVERER OF SWITZER- LAND .....	225

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
XII.—MASANIELLO, THE FISHERMAN OF NAPLES....	247
XIII.—CAPTURE OF ROME BY ALARIC.....	261
XIV.—WALLACE, THE HERO OF SCOTLAND .....	277
XV.—BATTLES OF CRESSY, AGINCOURT, AND BLEN- HEIM.....	289
XVI.—THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA .....	307
XVII.—CONQUEST OF MEXICO BY CORTEZ.....	319
XVIII.—EXPEDITION AGAINST ALGIERS (1541) .....	328
XIX.—MASSACRE OF ST. BARTHOLOMEW .....	336
XX.—ABJURATION AND ASSASSINATION OF HENRY IV. OF FRANCE .....	346
XXI.—GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS, KING OF SWEDEN.....	355
XXII.—PETER THE GREAT, CZAR OF RUSSIA .....	367
XXIII.—DESTRUCTION OF THE BASTILLE .....	379

## WONDERS OF HISTORY.



Death of Sardanapalus.

### CHAPTER I.

#### WONDERS OF BABYLON AND NINEVEH, AND DESTRUCTION OF NINEVEH.

THE city of Babylon was one of the oldest and the most wonderful of all the cities of the ancient world, and was the centre of wealth and civilization. Well might it be designated, as it was in the old Testament — “Babylon the great, the glory of king-

doms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency." But its glory is long since departed, and as it is stated in the words of prophecy, it is desolate. The words of the prophet are, "It shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah : it shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation ; neither shall the Arabian pitch his tent there ; neither shall the shepherds make their folds there : but wild beasts of the desert shall lie there ; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures ; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there, and the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in them. desolate, and dragons in their pleasant palaces ; and her time is near to come and her days shall not be prolonged."

Of the fulfilment of this prophecy, it is my intention to inform my young readers ; for nothing is more calculated to excite their wonder and astonishment, than the marvellous ways in which God executes his judgments upon proud and wicked nations.

Nimrod, the "mighty hunter," recorded in Scripture, seems to have been the man, who, driving the wild beasts from the plains of Shinah, founded there a city, Belus, who was probably contemporary with Shamgor and Queen Semiramis, was said to have enlarged and adorned it. But Nebuchadnezzar and Nicothes, his daughter-in-law, finished it, and made it one of the wonders of the world.

Herodotus, who had visited this city, gives us the following description of it :—" It is situated on a large plain, and is a perfect square ; each side, by every approach, is in length one hundred and twenty furlongs ; the space, therefore, occupied by the whole is four hundred and eighty furlongs. So extensive

is the ground which Babylon occupies. Its internal beauty and magnificence exceed whatever has come within my knowledge. It is surrounded with a trench, very wide, deep, and full of water ; the wall beyond this is two hundred royal cubits high, and fifty wide. It will not be foreign to my purpose to describe the use to which the earth dug out of the trench was converted, as well as the particular manner in which they constructed the wall. The earth of the trench was first of all laid in heaps, and when a sufficient quantity was obtained, made into square bricks, and baked in a furnace. They used as cement a composition of heated bitumen, which, mixed with the tops of reeds, was placed between every thirtieth course of bricks. Having thus lined the sides of the trench, they proceeded to build the wall in the same manner, on the summit of which, and fronting each other, they erected small watch towers of one story, leaving a space between them, through which a chariot and four horses might pass and turn. In the circumference of the wall, at different distances, were a hundred massy gates of brass, whose hinges and frames were of the same metal.

" The great river Euphrates divides Babylon into two parts. The walls meet and form an angle with the river at each extremity of the town, where a breast-work of burnt bricks begins and is continued along each bank. The city, which abounds in houses of from three to four stories in height, is regularly divided into streets. Through these, which are parallel, there are tranverse avenues to the river, opened through the wall and breast-work, and secured by an equal number of little gates of brass. The first wall

is regularly fortified ; the interior one, though less in substance, is of almost equal strength. Besides these, in the centre of each division of the city, there is a circular space surrounded with a wall. In one of these stands the royal palace, which fills a large and strongly defended space."\*

Another of the great works at Babylon was the temple of Belus, which stood, as I have mentioned already, near the old palace. It was most remarkable for a prodigious tower, that stood in the middle of it. At the foundation, according to Herodotus,† it was a square of a furlong on each side, that is, half a mile in the whole compass, and (according to Strabo) it was also a furlong in height. It consisted of eight towers, built one above the other ; and because it decreased gradually to the top, Strabo calls the whole a pyramid. It is not only asserted, but proved, that this tower much exceeded the greatest of the pyramids of Egypt in height. Therefore we have good reason to believe, as Bochart asserts,‡ that this is the very same tower which was built there at the confusion of languages : and the rather, because it is attested by several profane authors, that this tower was all built of brick and bitumen, as the Scriptures tell us the tower of Babel was. The ascent to the top was by stairs on the outside round it ; that is, perhaps, there was an easy sloping ascent in the side of the outer wall, which, turning by very slow degrees in a spiral line eight times round the tower from the bottom to the top, had the same appearance

\* Herod. lib. i. c. 178, *et seq.*

† Herod. lib. i. c. 181. Diod. lib. ii. p. 98. Strab. lib. xvi. p. 738.  
Phal. part. l. lib. i. c. 9.

as if there had been eight towers placed one upon another. In these different stories were many large rooms, with arched roofs supported by pillars. Over the whole, on the top of the tower, was an observatory, by the benefit of which the Babylonians became more expert in astronomy than all other nations, and made in a short time the great progress in it ascribed to them in history.

But the chief use to which this tower was designed was the worship of the god Belus or Baal, as also that of several other deities; for which reason there was a multitude of chapels in different parts of the tower. The riches of this temple in statuary, tables, censers, cups, and other sacred vessels, all of massy gold, were immense. Among other images, there was one forty feet high, which weighed a thousand Babylonish talents. The Babylonish talent, according to Pollux, in his *Onomasticon*, contained 7,000 Attic drachmas, and consequently was a sixth part more than the Attic talent, which contains but 6,000 drachmas.

According to the calculation which Diodorus makes of the riches contained in this temple, the sum total amounts to 6,300 Babylonish talents of gold.

This temple stood till the time of Xerxes;\* but he, on his return from his Grecian expedition, demolished it entirely, after having first plundered it of all its immense riches. Alexander, on his return to

\* Herod. lib. i. c. 183. Strab. lib. xvi. p. 738. Arrian. lib. vii. p. 480.

Babylon from his Indian expedition, purposed to have rebuilt it ; and in order thereto, set 10,000 men to work, to rid the place of its rubbish ; but, after they had laboured herein two months, Alexander died, which put an end to the undertaking.

Besides the works thus described by Herodotus, there were others in this city equally magnificent and splendid.

There was a beautiful and magnificent stone bridge over the Euphrates, leading from one part of the city to the other, a furlong in length, and thirty feet in breadth ; at each end of which was a splendid palace, communicating with that on the other side, by means of a passage under the bed of the river. There was that prodigious and wonderful effort of imperial wealth and power—the lake which was dug near Sapphira, to the west of the city, to secure it from the dreadful effects of the periodical inundations. This immense artificial basin was forty miles square, and thirty-five feet deep, according to Herodotus, and seventy-five according to Megasthenes. Into this lake was the whole river turned by a canal cut from the west side of it, till they had finished two artificial channels at a very considerable distance above the town, to receive the inundations of the river, occasioned by the periodical melting of the snow on the mountains of Armenia, which turned the course of these waters into the Tigris, before they reached Babylon. And then, in the eastern part of the city, arose, in majestic grandeur, the pensile gardens, which were reckoned among the seven wonders of the world. These consisted of four terraces, one above

another, raised on a wall twenty-two feet thick, and forming a perfect square, each of whose sides was four hundred feet. The middle of them rested on arches supported by massy pillars. The following particular account of them is furnished by Diodorus Siculus :—

" This hanging garden, near the citadel, was not built by Semiramis, but by a later prince, called Cyrus, for the sake of a courtezan, who being a Persian (as they say) by birth, and coveting meadows on mountain tops, desired the king, by an artificial plantation, to imitate the lands in Persia. The ascent up to this garden was as to the top of a mountain, and it had buildings and apartments out of one into another, like unto a theatre. Under the steps to the ascent were built arches, one above another, rising gently by degrees, which supported the whole plantation. The highest arch, upon which the platform of the garden was laid, was fifty cubits high, and the garden itself was surrounded with battlements and bulwarks. The walls were made very strong, built at no small charge and expense, being two-and-twenty feet thick, and every sally-port ten feet wide ; over the several stories of this fabric were laid beams of huge massy stones, each sixteen feet long, and four broad. The roof over all these was first covered with reeds, daubed with abundance of brimstone ; then upon them were laid double tiles, pargeted together with a hard and durable mortar, and over them, after all, was a covering with sheets of lead, that the wet which drenched through the earth might not rot the foundation. Upon all these was laid earth of convenient depth for the growth of

the largest trees. When the soil was laid even and smooth, it was planted with all sorts of trees, which, both for greatness and beauty, might delight the spectators. The arches (which stood one above another, and by that means darted light sufficient one into another) had in them many stately rooms of all kinds, and for all purposes. But there was one that had in it certain engines, whereby it drew plenty of water out of the river, through certain conduits and conveyances from the platform of the garden, without any one being able to perceive the operation.\*

But there were other qualities by which this city was distinguished, besides the magnificence and splendour of its works.

Situated on the waters of the Euphrates and the Tigris, merchandise could easily be brought to it down these streams, from Syria, Asia Minor, Armenia, and Media ; and up them, from the Persian Gulf, from India, Persia, Arabia, Egypt, and every part of Africa. Thus it became the dépôt of the treasures of both Africa and Asia, and was strictly what Ezekiel described it, " the land of merchants," xvii. 4. Besides these, the Babylonians appear to have made all kinds of apparel, and every article of luxury; and it was celebrated for the production and export of various kinds of manufacture.

From a very early period, Babylon was the seat of learning and science ; and the science of astronomy made very considerable advances in it. Astronomy, however, was pursued principally, if not altogether, with superstitious views. Believing that the stars

\* Translation, by Booth, vol. i. p. 108.

exerted an influence over the destinies of men, as well as the state of the weather, the Babylonians supposed that a knowledge of their courses would enable them to foretel future events. The result of the astronomical and astrological observations of ages, was deposited in a peculiar *caste* of priests, or literati, as among the Egyptians and Persians. These were called by the general name of *learned* or *wise men*, and also, Chaldeans.

The dominions of Babylon were most extensive. Babylon Proper, or the Babylonian empire in its most restricted sense, included the provinces of Chaldee and Assyria. But, in addition to these, its original and rightful possessions, besides a number of other kingdoms of less consideration, it had acquired by conquest an authority over Arabia, Syria, Palestine, and Egypt.

The city of Nineveh was but little inferior to that of Babylon. It was built by Ninus, on the banks of the Tigris, with the design of making it the largest and noblest city of the world.

From the records of ancient historians, Nineveh appears to have been 150 stadia, that is, eighteen miles and a quarter, in length, and ninety stadia, or eleven miles and a quarter, in breadth; consequently, it was an oblong square. The prophet Jonah describes Nineveh as being an exceeding great city, of three days' journey, which is to be understood of the whole compass of the city, nearly sixty miles. The walls were one hundred feet high, and so thick that three chariots might go abreast on it with ease. They were fortified and adorned with fifteen hundred

towers, two hundred feet high, and a hundred brass gates. The Scriptures give us some idea of the population of Nineveh, when they inform us that there were more than six score thousand persons in it that could not discern between their right hand and their left hand—the proverbial expression for the infant population, so that its entire population might be, at least, two millions.

The exact spot where Nineveh stood cannot now be ascertained. According to the prophecy of Nahum, with an overrunning flood God has made an utter end to the place of it. But we may assume that it lay on the east of the Tigris, not far from the river Lyens, which runs into the Tigris. It was thus favourable to commerce, and hence the prophet Nahum says (iii. 16), that Nineveh had more merchants than there are stars in the sky. But here reigned the greatest corruption of morals, and the effeminacy and licentiousness of the Assyrian monarchs were proverbial.

One of the most effeminate and licentious of these was Sardanapalus, the son of Pul. He was the last of the Assyrian kings, and surpassed his predecessors in effeminacy, luxury, and cowardice. He seldom went out of his palace, scarcely attended to public business, but spent all his time between his women and his slaves. He placed his chief glory on feasting and rioting. It is said that he was so effeminate that he even dressed like a woman, and painted his face that he might look more beautiful.

Arbaces, governor of Media, having heard of the weakness of Sardanapalus, found means to get into the

royal palace, and utterly despising such a character, determined to dethrone him, as he did not consider him worthy to rule a great nation.

He immediately formed a conspiracy against him. Belesis, governor of Babylon, and several others, entered into it. When the king received intelligence of what was going on, he hid himself in the innermost recesses of his palace ; at last, however, he was dragged forth, and obliged to take the field against his enemies, with some forces which had been assembled ; but was in the first skirmish defeated, he then fled to the city of Nineveh, where he shut himself up.

Nineveh was well fortified, and stored with provisions for a considerable time. It had also been declared by an ancient oracle that Nineveh could never be taken, unless the river became an enemy to the city. Weak minds are commonly superstitious, and the king thought it quite impossible that the river could rebel against him, and considered himself safe.

But, at last, while the siege was going on, the Tigris, by a violent inundation, threw down two miles and a half of the city wall, and thus opened a passage to the enemy. Sardanapalus immediately thought himself lost, and gave himself up to despair. Wishing, perhaps, to disappoint his enemies, he ordered a pile of wood to be raised in the palace, and setting fire to it, burnt himself, his eunuchs, his women, his palace, and his treasures.

After his death a statue was erected to him, which represented him in the posture of a dancer ; with an

12      WONDERS OF BABYLON AND NINEVEH.

inscription upon it, in which he addressed himself to the spectators in these words, -

" Eat, drink, and be merry—everything else is nothing."

With this king ended the first Assyrian monarchy, and on its ruins were formed three kingdoms, of Media, Babylon and Nineveh, as separate monarchies.

## CAPTURE OF BABYLON BY CYRUS.



Belshazzar's impious Feast.

## CHAPTER II.

CYRUS was the son of Cambyses, King of Persia, and of Mandana, daughter of Astyages, King of the Medes. The Persians were, at the time of his birth, divided into twelve tribes, and inhabited only one province of that vast country which has since borne the name of Persia. But through the valour and

wisdom of Cyrus, the Persians acquired the empire of the East, and Persia extended from the river Eudus to the Tigris, and from the Caspian Sea to the ocean.

Cyrus signalised himself in various wars under Astyages, his grandfather, and continued in Asia Minor till he had entirely subdued all the nations that inhabited it, from the Ægean Sea to the river Euphrates. From thence he proceeded to Syria and Arabia, which he also subjected. He then entered into Assyria and advanced towards Babylon, the only city in the East that had stood out against him.

The siege of this important place was no easy enterprise. The walls of it were of a prodigious height, and appeared to be inaccessible, and the population is said to have amounted to five millions. The city was well stored by provisions which were calculated to last for twenty years, and the warlike munitions, engines, and arms were prodigious.

These means of defence did not, however, discourage Cyrus, who had been used to conquer. He almost despaired, however, of taking the place by storm or assault, and therefore proceeded as if his intentions were to reduce it by famine.

His first orders were, for a line of circumvallation to be drawn quite round the city, a distance of above sixty miles, by means of a large and deep ditch; and that his troops might not be over fatigued, he divided his army into twelve bodies, and assigned each of them its month for guarding the trenches.

The besieged, thinking themselves secure by means of their ramparts, magazines, and strength of walls, insulted Cyrus daily from the tops of the high-

towers by which they were flanked. At the same time they hurled every missile against him—large stones by means of machines, immense arrows, and balls of combustible materials, which spread both alarm and devastation among his troops.

The prophets Jeremiah and Isaiah had long foretold the destruction of Babylon for her wickedness, especially her pride. It was foretold by them that desolation should come upon her suddenly ; that she should be taken as in a snare ; that her springs should be dried up, and that she should be taken in the night-time, upon a day of feasting and rejoicing—all of which was fulfilled to the very letter.

These predictions were not unknown to Cyrus, and as he seemed to be born for their accomplishment, as he pursued his work with the greatest ardour. He was soon informed, that in the city, on a certain day, a great festival was to be celebrated, and that the Babylonians, on occasion of that solemnity, were accustomed to spend the whole night in drinking and debauchery.

Labynitus, called in the scripture Belshazzar, was a man of immense pride, and would suffer nothing to interfere with his round of pleasure ; he therefore gave a splendid entertainment to the chief officers of his kingdom and ladies of the court, in honour of the city being invested ; and to give more splendour to the entertainment, he ordered the gold and silver vessels which had been taken from the temple of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar to be used in the repast, and he and his concubines and whole court drank out of these sacred vessels.

While thus sacrilegiously employed, heated with

wine and swelled with the pride of luxury and magnificence, suddenly a blaze of intense light appeared on the opposite wall, and in the midst a finger appeared, tracing upon it certain characters in the Hebrew language. The vision paralyzed the monarch, who, in great alarm, rose from the feast and broke up the assembly.

And now, overpowered with terror, he sent for the diviners and astrologers of his court, to read and interpret the mysterious writing. But every one expressed his inability to do so, and declared the matter only to be interpreted by a son of Israel, the nation of Jehovah, in whose language the sentence was written.

The prophet Daniel was thereupon immediately sent for, who, upon being called upon to explain the mysterious writing, with a boldness inspired alone by the Spirit of God, rebuked the proud monarch for his impious festival, for his wicked pride and his idolatry, and for the defiance he had offered to God by his use of the sacred vessels of His holy temple.

He then proceeded to interpret the writing, declaring the words to be "Mene, Tekel, Upharsin." That Mene, which signifies *number*, indicated that the days of his kingdom were numbered; that Tekel, which signified *weight*, indicated that the king was weighed in the balance and found wanting; and that Upharsin, signifying *division*, showed that his kingdom was divided among the Medes and Persians.

Belshazzar, after his first astonishment had subsided, seems to have paid no attention to the warning thus delivered, but gave himself up to his libidinous courses, and again sat down to his banquets, ordering

more sumptuous displays to be made, and continued revelling, singing and dancing, without the slightest care for the future.

Cyrus, in the mean time, well informed of the confusion that was generally occasioned by this festival, both in the palace and city, had posted a part of his troops on that side where the river entered into the city, and another part on that side where it went out, and then commanded them to enter the city that very night by marching along the channel of the river as soon as they found it fordable.

Having thus given all necessary orders, and exhorted his officers to follow him, by representing to them that he marched under the conduct of the gods, in the evening he made them open the great receptacles or ditches on both sides of the city, above and below, that the water of the river might run into them. By this means the Euphrates was quickly emptied and its channel became dry.

The two bodies of troops posted above and below the city now entered the channel and advanced towards each other, without meeting with any obstacle, and the gates of brass which guarded the city from the river side having been opened by a secret agency, the two bodies of troops poured in without any obstacle, and meeting together at the royal palace, according to agreement, surprised the guards and cut them to pieces.

Belshazzar, at last made acquainted with his danger, rushed forth madly, sword in hand, surrounded by a few chosen followers. They beat back the advanced guard of the Median troops, but multitudes poured in upon them like a torrent. Gobrya, with a

veteran band, at last met him, and rushing upon the wretched monarch, struck the crown from his head, while his soldiers slew him with their swords. The interior of the palace was then entered, and all the concubines, dancers, and musicians put to the sword.

Cyrus having thus entered the city, put all to the sword that were found in the streets; he then commanded the citizens to bring him all their arms, and afterwards to shut themselves up in their houses. The next morning, by break of day, the garrison which kept the citadel, being apprised that the city was taken and the king killed, surrendered themselves to Cyrus. Thus did he find himself, with scarcely any resistance, in peaceable possession of the strongest and greatest city in the world.

## TRIUMPH OF CYRUS.



## CHAPTER III.

THE first care of Cyrus after the capture of Babylon was to restore order, and he then determined to make a triumphal exhibition of a solemn august ceremony of religion, by marching in a pompous cavalcade to the

places consecrated to the gods, in order to offer sacrifices to them. In this procession Cyrus thought it politic to display the utmost splendour and magnificence, to captivate the eyes of his new subjects.

On the appointed day of the ceremony, the whole of the flower of the army assembled at the king's palace by break of day. Four thousand of the guards drew up four deep, placed themselves in front of the palace ; and two thousand on the two sides of it, ranged in the same order. The whole cavalry were drawn out, the Persians on the right and their allies on the left. The chariots of war being arranged half on one side and half on the other.

As soon as the palace gates were opened, a great number of bulls of exquisite beauty were led out four abreast. These were to be sacrificed to Jupiter and other gods, according to the ceremonies prescribed by the magi. Next followed the horses that were to be sacrificed to the Sun. Immediately after these a white chariot crowned with flowers, the pole of which was of gold ; this was to be offered to Jupiter. Then came a second chariot of the same colour and adorned in the same manner, to be offered to the Sun. After these followed a third, the horses of which were caparisoned with scarlet housings. Behind came the men who carried the sacred fire on a large hearth, and an assemblage of priests and soothsayers, in long white robes, trimmed with silver.

Next came, in the greatest pomp, in a superb car, richly adorned with gold and precious stones, the conqueror Cyrus. He sat upright in his car, with his head encircled with the laurel diadem. His under-

tunic was of purple mixed with white, which was a colour peculiar to kings ; over his garments he wore a large purple robe, fastened by precious stones, and embroidered with golden suns. At his side walked the master of the horse, who was of a comely stature, but not so tall as Cyrus, and thus his stature appeared more to advantage.

As soon as the conqueror appeared, all the spectators fell down prostrate, and then the loudest shouts were heard from those assembled on the house tops. Round about the chariot of Cyrus were above three hundred officers of the household, richly dressed, having javelins in their hands, and mounted upon stately horses ; after these followed two hundred led horses of the king's stable, each of them having embroidered furniture and bits of solid gold. Next came the Persian cavalry, divided into four bodies, each consisting of 10,000 men; then the Median horse; and after them the cavalry of the allies. The chariots of war, four abreast, marched in the rear and closed the procession.

When this immense procession came to the field and open spots consecrated to the gods, they offered their sacrifices, first to Jupiter and then to the Sun. To the honour of the first were burnt bulls, and to the honour of the second, horses. They likewise sacrificed some victims to the Earth, according to the appointment of the magi; then to the demi-gods, the patrons and protectors of Syria.

This solemn ceremony was concluded with feasting and rejoicing, the release of prisoners, and public games of all kinds, the principal of which was, however, horse and chariot racing. Cyrus himself is

said to have won the prize in the horse-racing, for he was an accomplished horseman. At the conclusion of these sports Cyrus gave a grand entertainment to all his officers, and at its conclusion made every one a noble present, and distributed donations and gifts to the numerous poor of the city.

Such is the account given us by ancient historians of the taking of Babylon, by Cyrus, which put an end to the Babylonian empire, after a duration of two hundred and ten years from the beginning of the reign of Nabonassar, just fifty years after he had destroyed the city of Jerusalem and the Temple; and thus were accomplished some of the predictions which Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Daniel had pronounced against her.

## DESTRUCTION OF BABYLON BY DARIUS.



Expedition of Darius.

## CHAPTER IV.

It was only twenty years after the capture of Babylonia by Cyrus, and the subjugation of the Babylonish empire, that the conquered, groaning under the oppressive yoke of their Persian masters, attempted to shake

it off, and regain their independence. In the beginning of the fifth year of the reign of Darius Hystaspis, Babylon revolted, and could not be reduced till after a twenty months' siege.

The Babylonians were much discontented with the successor of Cyrus for removing the seat of government to Susa, as it greatly diminished their wealth and grandeur; and taking advantage of the revolution that happened in Persia on the death of Cambyses, they made secretly for four years secret preparations for war.

When they thought their plans ripe for execution, and had, as they supposed, sufficiently stored the city with provisions, they openly set up the standard of rebellion, which obliged Darius to besiege them with a large army, hastily gathered together for this especial purpose.

The Babylonians were determined to resist to the last extremity, and when they beheld the immense Persian army hemming in their proud city, treated the besiegers with defiance, and insulted them from the tops of their high walls, provoking them with opprobrious language to come and take their city, and occasionally, to show how well they were provided with provisions, threw bread and meat into the hostile camp.

But as the siege progressed, and Darius found means to obtain constant supplies from the surrounding country, the Babylonians found themselves, after sixteen months' close siege, straightened for provisions, but determined not to yield, and to make their provisions hold out the longer, the lords and governors of the city took one of the most barbarous

of resolutions, namely—to destroy all such of their own people as were unserviceable in defence of the city. Accordingly an edict was passed for the massacre of all the old men, the young children, and women, except that every man was allowed to keep his best-beloved wife and one servant maid to do the business of the family.

This horrible edict was put speedily into execution, and the squares and streets flowed with the blood of the wretched victims who were massacred by the soldiers in heaps. Their unburied bodies produced a pestilence which was almost as cruel as the sword.

For eighteen months the Persian army surrounded the city in vain. All that force could accomplish had been done, and every stratagem had been tried without avail. They had even attempted the same plan by which Cyrus took the city; namely, that of diverting the course of the river which flowed through it, but this had been anticipated by the besieged, who drove back the assailants with great loss.

Darius at last began to have doubts concerning his success in this enterprise, and almost despaired of taking the city, when he was strangely surprised by Zopyrus, one of the chief noblemen of his court, appearing before him in a most wretched condition. He was streaming with blood, his nose and ears were cut off, and his whole body disfigured by marks of the scourge, and with wounds.

Starting up from his throne, Darius inquired in a voice of anger who had done this deed of cruelty.

"You yourself, O King!" replied Zopyrus. "The desire I had of rendering you service has put me in

this condition. As I was fully persuaded that you never would have consented to this method, I took counsel alone of the zeal I have for your service." He then opened to him his scheme for the reduction of the city, which was to go over to the enemy as one deserting under the tyrannical treatment of his lord, and offer his services to the besieged, and having obtained their confidence, to take measures for opening the gates to the besiegers.

The king, although he could not look upon Zopyrus without the utmost affliction, readily acceded to his proposition, and after some consultation, settled everything that was proper to be done; and in the night time Zopyrus went to the walls of the city, and having told his story to the wardens of one of the gates, was soon admitted.

He was then carried before the governor, to whom he related his seeming misfortune, and the cruel treatment he had met with from Darius, for having dissuaded him from continuing any longer before a city which it was impossible for him to take. He offered the Babylonians his services, which could not fail of being highly useful to them, since he was acquainted with all the designs of the Persians, and since the desire of revenge would inspire him with fresh courage and resolution. His name and person were both well known at Babylon—the condition in which he appeared, his blood and wounds, certified for him—and by proofs not to be suspected confirmed the truth of all he advanced; they therefore credited his story, and placed implicit confidence in his suggestions.

He was first given the command of a few troops, with which he made a sally into the enemies' camp, and cut off above a thousand of the besiegers. A few days after he killed double that number; and on the third sally above four thousand were destroyed. All this had been previously agreed upon between him and Darius.

Of course these successes made Zopyrus highly popular at Babylon. The greatest confidence was reposed in him; he was raised to the highest offices of the state, and was at last declared generalissimo of the forces, and entrusted with the care of guarding the walls of the city.

Having thus obtained possession of all the power he required, he soon found means to open a correspondence with Darius, and it was agreed upon that on a certain day a great assault should be made. Under pretence of making a sally, Zopyrus ordered the gates to be opened on one side of the walls, when he had directed the greater part of the Babylonians to the other, and Darius and some chosen veteran soldiers entered that feebly defended post, and thus suddenly and with but little fighting got within the walls of the city. His battalions then wheeled round with alacrity, and the whole army rushed in as a mighty torrent.

No sooner was Darius master of the city than he ordered the hundred brazen gates to be pulled down, and all the walls of the city to be entirely demolished, that she might never be in a condition to rebel more against him. He might have exterminated all the inhabitants, but he contented himself with ordering

about three thousand of the principal fomentors of the rebellion to be impaled, and granted a pardon to the rest. But the city itself was made desolate in its defences, and was never able again to resist the power of the invader.

Babylon after this gradually decayed. The Macedonians, who succeeded the Persians, forbore to embellish or even to repair it, and in process of time she was so utterly forsaken that nothing was remaining of her but the walls, till at last the kings of Persia, finding the place deserted, made a park of it, in which they kept wild beasts for hunting. Thus did it become, as the prophet foretold, "a dwelling for ravenous beasts;" and, instead of citizens, she was now inhabited by wild boars, leopards, bears, deer, and wild asses; as it was written—"Wild beasts of the desert shall be there, and dragons shall dwell in their pleasant places."

In the time of Alexander the Great the river had quitted its ordinary channel by reason of the outlets and canals that had been made, and the ruins of its walls and towers. This monarch had a desire for its restoration, but his sudden death put a stop to the design, and after this Babylon was neglected to such a degree that at last its river was converted into an inaccessible pool, which covered the place where that impious city had stood, as the Prophet Isaiah foretold—"I will make it pools of water."—Isaiah, xiv. 23.

By means of successive changes Babylon became an utter desert, and all the country round was full of desolation; so that at the present day its locality is a

subject of controversy. In this manner God's prediction has been fulfilled—"I will make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water, and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts."

## CHAPTER V.

## JERUSALEM.



EQUALLY wonderful with Babylon and Nineveh was Jerusalem, the principal city of the Jews, and equally extraordinary the circumstances which attended its destruction. From the important circumstances and associations connected with this city, it merits a particular description, for it was here that the redemption of

the world was accomplished.

Jerusalem is supposed to be the same city as is, in the history of Abraham, called Salem, of which Melchizedek was king. Certain it is, that at a very early period of the history of Canaan, it formed a very powerful Canaanitish kingdom.\* It was called Jebus, and belonged to a tribe called from their city Jebusites. It lay in the confines of the territories of Judah and Benjamin; but it was not possessed by these tribes till it was wrested from its original occupants by David and his valorous troops. It was built

\* Jos. xv. 63.

on, and surrounded by several hills. "The situation of Jerusalem," says the author of the History of the Jews, "is remarkably imposing: it stands on several eminences of unequal heights, some parts of which slope gradually, on others the sides are abrupt and precipitous. All around, excepting to the north, run deep ravines or valleys, like entrenchments formed by nature, beyond which arise mountains of greater height, which encircle and seem to protect the city. It is open only to the north, as if the way had been levelled for the multitudes from the rest of the tribes to arrive at the holy city, without difficulty or obstacle. The hill of Zion, on which David's city stood, rose to the south: it was divided by a deep and narrow ravine from the other hills, over which the city gradually spread.

The ancient city of Jebus occupied probably only one of the hills on which Jerusalem afterwards stood, and that the more northern. Connected with it, however, on another hill, called Zion, south of the former, and higher than it, was a fortress, which also David wrested from the Jebusites; and having possessed himself of this fortress, he made it his royal residence, and enclosed the whole mountain, and added it to the city, giving it the specific name of "the City of David."\* The city was still farther enlarged by Solomon, enclosed with a wall, and adorned with erections which, for costliness and splendour, might vie not only with any in ancient but even with any in modern times.

\* 2 Sam. v. 9.

The first of these erections was the Temple. David had contemplated this erection, and had made most abundant and costly preparations for it ; but he was forbidden by God to proceed with it, on account of having shed so much blood in war. The work of raising this splendid edifice, therefore, was assigned to Solomon, who was to succeed him on the throne, and to be eminently a man of peace. Having then sufficiently added to the materials provided by his father, David, Solomon commenced the work.

"The eminence of Moriah," observes the writer just quoted, "the Mount of Vision, *i. e.* the height seen afar from the adjacent country which tradition pointed out as the spot where Abraham had offered his son, rose on the east side of the city. Its rugged top was levelled with immense labour ; its sides, which to the east and south were precipitous, were faced with a wall of stone, built up perpendicular from the bottom of the valley, so as to appear to those who looked down of most terrific height ; a work of prodigious skill and labour, as the immense stones were strongly morticed together, and wedged into the rock. Around the whole area, or esplanade, an irregular quadrangle, was a solid wall of considerable height and strength : within this was an open court, into which the Gentiles were either from the first, or subsequently, admitted. A second wall encompassed another quadrangle, called the court of the Israelites. Along this wall, on the inside, ran a portico or cloister, over which were chambers for different sacred purposes. Within this again another, probably a lower

wall, separated the court of the priests from that of the Israelites. To each court the ascent was by steps, so that the platform of the inner court was on a higher level than that of the outer.

"The Temple itself was rather a monument of the wealth than the architectural skill and science of the people. It was a wonder of the world, from the splendour of its materials, more than the grace, boldness, or majesty of its height and dimensions. It consisted of a propylæon, a temple, and a sanctuary; called respectively the porch, the holy place, and the holy of holies. Yet, in some respects, if the measurements are correct, the Temple must have resembled the form of a simple Gothic church.

"In the front, to the east, stood the porch, a tall tower, rising to the height of two hundred and ten feet. Either within, or, like the Egyptian obelisks, before the porch, stood two pillars of brass—by one account, twenty-seven, by another, above sixty feet high; the latter statement probably including their capitals and bases. These were called Jachin and Boaz (durability and strength). The capitals of these were of the richest workmanship, with net-work, chainwork, and pomegranates. The porch was the same width as the Temple, thirty-five feet; its depth, seventeen and a half. The length of the main building—including the holy place, seventy feet, and the holy of holies, thirty-five—was in the whole one hundred and five feet; the height, fifty-two and a half feet. Josephus carries the whole building up to the height of the porch; but this is out of all credible proportion, making the height twice the length, and six times the width.

"Along each side, and perhaps at the back of the main building, ran an aisle, divided into three stories of small chambers ; the wall of the Temple being thicker at the bottom, left a rest to support the beams of these chambers, which were not let into the wall.

"These aisles, the chambers of which were appropriated as vestiaries, treasuries, and for other sacred purposes, seem to have reached about half way up the main wall of what we may call the nave and choir : the windows into the latter were probably above them ; these were narrow, but widened inwards.

"If the dimensions of the Temple appear by no means imposing, it must be remembered, that but a small part of the religious ceremonies took place within the walls. The holy of holies was entered but once a year, and that by the high priest alone. It was the secret and unapproachable shrine of the Deity. The holy place, the body of the Temple, admitted only the officiating priests.

"The open court, called in popular language the Temple, or rather the inner quadrangle, was in fact the great place of Divine worship. Here, under the open air, were celebrated the great public and national rites, the processions, the offerings, the sacrifices ; here stood the great tank for ablution, and the high altar for burnt offerings. But the costliness of the materials, the richness and variety of the details, amply compensated for the moderate dimensions of the building.

The walls were of hewn stone, faced within with cedar, which was richly carved with knobs and flowers ; the ceiling was of fir tree. But in every

part gold was lavished with the utmost profusion ; within and without, the floor, the walls, the ceiling ; in short, the whole house is described as overlaid with gold. The finest and purest, that of Parvaim, by some supposed to be Ceylon, was reserved for the sanctuary. Here the cherubim, which stood upon the covering of the ark, with their wings touching each wall, were entirely covered with gold.

"The sumptuous veil, of the richest materials and brightest colours, which divided the holy of holies from the holy place, was suspended on chains of gold. Cherubim, palm trees, and flowers, the favourite ornaments, every where covered with gilding, were wrought in almost all parts. The altar within the Temple, and the table of shew-bread, were likewise covered with the same precious metal. All the vessels, the candlesticks, five hundred basons, and all the rest of the sacrificial and other utensils, were solid gold.

"Besides the lofty pillars above mentioned, there was a great tank, called a sea, of molten brass, supported on twelve oxen, three turned each way ; this was seventeen and a half feet in diameter. There was also a great altar, and ten large vessels for ablution, called lavers, standing on bases of pedestals, the rims of which were richly ornamented with a border, on which were wrought figures of lions, oxen, and cherubim. The bases below were formed of four wheels, like those of a chariot. All the works in brass were cast in a place near the Jordan, where the soil was of a stiff clay, suited to the purpose.

"For seven years the fabric arose in silence. All the timbers, the stones, even of the most enormous size, measuring between seventeen and eighteen feet,

were hewn and fitted, so as to be put together without the sound of any tool whatever; as it has been expressed, with great poetical beauty,

'Like some tall palm the noiseless fabric grew.'

At the end of this period, the Temple and its courts being completed, the solemn dedication took place, with the greatest magnificence which the king and the nation could display."

Having finished the Temple, and thus provided for the decent celebration of the worship of God, Solomon next built a palace for himself in Jerusalem. The building of this palace occupied thirteen years. In it was a vast hall for public business, which, from its cedar pillars, was called "the house of the forest of Lebanon." The length of this hall was one hundred and seventy-five feet, its width, half that measure, and its height, fifty feet. The roof was of beams of cedar, and rested on four rows of columns of the same wood. It had three rows of windows on each side, facing each other. Besides this great hall, there were two others, called porches, of smaller dimensions, in one of which was placed the throne of justice. Near to this building was the apartment assigned to Pharaoh's daughter, his principal wife, and perhaps a sort of harem for his wives in general, with other places of vast extent; particularly, if we may credit Josephus, a large banqueting hall.

Another erection with which Solomon adorned Jerusalem was a noble causeway, or terrace, thrown over the valley lying between Mount Zion and

Mount Moriah, whereby his passage from his palace, which stood on the former hill, to the Temple, which stood on the latter, was rendered more easy. And another was what is called Millo, which was probably a common or public state house, and was used also for an armoury, and, perhaps, as a fortress in time of war.

Of the wall which Solomon threw around Jerusalem, nothing is recorded beyond the fact of his having built it. In the time of Josephus, the wall of Jerusalem measured about four miles and a half in circumference, but whether the wall built by Solomon measured so much is uncertain. In the account of the rebuilding of the city under the pious and patriotic Nehemiah, there is particular mention made of the gates of Jerusalem ; now, as Nehemiah merely rebuilt or repaired the city, these gates are not unlikely to have been the same as those which were constructed by Solomon.

Under this monarch, Jerusalem attained the zenith of its glory. Besides the magnificent buildings already specified, he erected for himself a throne of ivory, and overlaid it with gold. Six steps led up to the seat, and on each side of the steps stood twelve lions. All the vessels of his palace were of pure gold ; silver was thought too mean. His armoury was furnished with gold ; two hundred targets, and three hundred shields of beaten gold were suspended in the house of the forest of Lebanon. Josephus mentions a body of archers, who escorted him from the city to his country palace, clad in dresses of Tyrian purple, and their hair powdered with gold dust. And it is testified in Holy Writ that "the king made silver in

Jerusalem as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycamore trees that are in the low plains, in abundance." (2 Chron. ix. 27.)

## THE SECOND TEMPLE.

Jerusalem was a place of very considerable magnificence and attraction in the time of our Lord. It then contained numerous splendid edifices, both civil and sacred, which are either distinctly mentioned, or obviously alluded to, in the New Testament.

The first of these that demands notice is the Temple. This was rebuilt by Herod the Great, who for nine years employed eighteen thousand workmen upon it, and spared no expense to render it equal, if not superior, in magnitude, splendour, and beauty, to any thing among mankind.

This second Temple, which was originally built by Zerubbabel after the captivity, differed in several respects from that built by Solomon, although they agreed in the main. In addition to its superior splendour and magnificence, the Temple of Solomon possessed five characteristics, of which the second Temple was destitute, and which constituted its chief glory. These were, the ark and mercy-seat,—the shechinah, or manifestation of the divine presence in the holy of holies,—the sacred fire on the altar, which had been first kindled from heaven,—the urim and thummim,—and the spirit of prophecy. But the second Temple surpassed the first in glory, inasmuch as it was frequently honoured with the presence of our blessed Lord.

The various apartments in each Temple were simi-

lar, as were also the purposes to which they were appropriated.

The sanctuary was entered through nine gates, which were on every side thickly coated with gold and silver : but there was one gate without the holy house, which was of Corinthian brass, the most precious metal in ancient times, and which far surpassed the others in beauty. For while these were of equal magnitude, the gate composed of Corinthian brass was much larger ; its height being fifty cubits, and its doors forty cubits, and its ornaments both of gold and silver being far more costly and massive.

The court of the Gentiles was surrounded by a range of porticos or cloisters, above which were galleries, or apartments, supported by pillars of white marble, each consisting of a single piece, and five-and-twenty cubits in height. One of these was called Solomon's porch or piazza, because it stood on a vast terrace, which he had originally raised from a valley beneath, four hundred cubits high, in order to enlarge the area on the top of the mountain, and make it equal to the plan of his intended building ; and as this terrace was the only work of Solomon's that remained in the second Temple, the piazza which stood upon it retained the name of that prince. This superb portico is termed the Royal Portico by Josephus, who represents it as the noblest work beneath the sun, being elevated to such a prodigious height, that no one could look down from its flat roof to the valley below, without being seized with dizziness, the sight not reaching to such an immeasurable depth. The south-east corner of the

roof of this portico, where the height was greatest, is supposed to have been the *πτερύγιον*, pinnacle, or extreme angle, whence Satan tempted our Saviour to precipitate himself. (Matt. iv. 5 ; Luke iv. 9.)

In the portico of the Temple were suspended the splendid votive offerings made by the piety of various individuals. Among its other treasures there was a golden temple given by Pompey, and several golden vines of exquisite workmanship as well as of immense size: for Josephus relates that there were clusters as tall as a man. And he adds, that all around were fixed up, and displayed, the spoils and trophies taken by Herod from the Barbarians and Arabians.

In the inner temple, or sanctuary, besides a profusion of gold plates, which, when the sun rose upon them, reflected so strong and dazzling an effulgence, that the eye of the spectator could no more bear it than it could the splendour of the sun,—there were stones which were forty-five cubits in length, five in height.

The city itself was strong from its situation; besides which, its fortifications were, for that age, of remarkable strength, and of recent erection. The walls and battlements were completed to the height of twenty-five cubits, and the breadth of twenty-five cubits, built with great stones twenty cubits long and ten broad, so that they could not be easily undermined, nor shaken by military engines. This was the outer wall (for there were two others), and it was strengthened with sixty strong and lofty towers. The two other walls were of corresponding strength; the second having fourteen towers and the third eighty. Besides this, there were several castles of extraordi-

nary strength, the royal palace and some others, which were stately and well fortified.

The Temple also exceeded in strength ; and for its situation, with its walls, towers, and other buildings, was at least equal to the strongest fortress then existing. And at the time of the siege in the city, the defenders were numerous, wanting no arms or warlike engines, invincibly obstinate, and brave to desperation. But, on the other hand, they wanted experience in the defence of towns, and in the use of warlike engines which they had taken from the Romans; their stores of provisions were utterly inadequate, and in a course of rapid exhaustion. There were two great parties in the city, that of Simon and that of John. However, the party differences of the defenders of the city were somewhat diminished, almost as soon as the Romans made their appearance, by the suppression of the party of Eleazer, which put John in sole possession of the Temple, and left him free to act with Simon against the Romans, and against Simon when the Romans intermitted their assaults.

The two great parties concurred in defence of the city; but when the urgent occasion had passed, they turned their arms against each other. Thus there was two-fold war, and the life-blood of Jerusalem was drained without respite. John defended the Temple and the castle of Antonia, and Simon the rest of the city. The space which their previous devastations had cleared within the city, served them for a field of battle against each other; from which, when occasion required, they unanimously hastened to act against the common enemy; after which, their mutual

hostilities were resumed, as if they had studied how to make their ruin more easy to the Romans.

When Titus arrived before the city, he made an ostentatious display of his forces, in battle array, in three divisions; the first and principal encamped at Scopas, about seven stadia from the city northward; the second about three stadia behind; and the third eastward, on the Mount of Olives. The first week, being the week of the Passover, he spent in making such arrangements as the survey which he had made shewed to be necessary, and in preparing the ground for future operations. The ground between Scopas and the city was levelled and cleared, by the demolition of trees, houses, hedges, and even rocks, which supplied materials to raise, against the wall, banks on which the military engines were planted; and the overtures of peace having been rejected with insult and scorn, he commenced active operations the day after the ending of the Paschal week, being Sunday, April 22d.

Three moveable towers having been erected on the banks, and the battering-rams having been brought to bear on the wall in three different places, the assault began, and the cry of terror arose throughout the city at the noise and destruction occasioned by these machines. Simon planted on the wall the military engines taken from Cestius, but want of skill in the men rendered them ineffective. The missiles from the towers soon cleared the wall, and left the rams to work unimpeded. Simon and John, however, concurred in some desperate sallies, in one of which they set the engines on fire; but many of the men were taken by the Romans, and crucified.

before the walls. These demonstrations, however were in general ineffectual.

The first breach was made in the outer wall, on Sunday, May 6th, when the Romans, rushing in through the breach, opened the gates, and obtained possession of the new city, the Jews retiring behind the second wall. The Roman camp was then removed to the conquered ground, after the greater part of the outer wall had been demolished. The second wall was defended with desperate bravery; and frequent sallies were made on the besiegers. The Romans, however, gained possession of the walls in five days, but the Jews made so obstinate a resistance in the streets, that they drove back the enemy, and took possession of the breach, from which it took three days more to expel them.

Titus being thus master of the new and lower cities, turned his attention to the tower of Antonia; and the stand here made by the besieged extorted the admiration of their enemies. John, who held the castle, dug a mine therefrom to the banks, by which they were destroyed; and two days after, Simon assaulted the remaining banks, and set fire to the engines that were planted on them. The flames spread to the banks, which were chiefly constructed of felled trees, and destroyed them, obliging the Romans to retreat to their camp, where they had an obstinate and bloody conflict, before they could drive back the Jews who had pursued them.

After this, and in order that famine might accomplish all its work in the town, by the besieged being shut up more closely, and precluded from all means of escape, Titus built a wall of circumvallation all

round the city, fortified at due intervals with thirteen towers, in which strong guards were stationed. This vast work, which was about six miles in extent, was accomplished by the Roman soldiers in three days, through one of those exertions of concentrated energy and application, which they alone, in that age, were capable of displaying.

Having accomplished this work, the Romans resumed their operations against Fort Antonia, which they took without much difficulty; for the garrison, being exhausted by famine, made but a feeble defence. Titus ordered it to be entirely demolished, that the site might afford ground for the operations against the Temple, which became the next object of attack. At this time (July 12th) the daily sacrifice ceased in the Temple, as no one remained properly qualified to officiate.

Titus, always anxious to preserve the Temple, sent Josephus on the last of his many embassies to the Zealots, inviting them to submission and peace; or, as an alternative, suggesting that John might, if he pleased, draw out his forces to battle, so that the Temple and city might be preserved from destruction. John answered with bitter invectives, adding, that Jerusalem was God's own city, and he had no fear that it could ever be taken. Josephus in vain reminded him of the blood and abomination with which he had himself defiled the city and Temple, and bade him recollect the ancient prophecies which foretold their overthrow. Josephus, indeed, every where manifests his conviction that God was with the Romans, and made use of them for the destruction of a guilty nation.

The Temple now became the great object of interest to all parties. The Jews were for the most part confident that it never could be taken; and expected some extraordinary manifestation of Divine power for its preservation, and the overthrow of the Romans. Titus was most anxious to preserve so magnificent a fabric for the glory of the Roman empire; but most of the superior officers were of opinion that so strong a fabric should be destroyed, lest it might serve as a stronghold and rallying point to the Jews in their future rebellions; and the soldiers cared only for the rich plunder which it offered. The Jews were prepared to shed their last blood in its defence, and the Romans deemed all labour light for so rich a prize. And they had much labour; for, before they could commence their operations, it was necessary to construct banks against the walls for the towers and battering rams; and for this purpose they were obliged to bring wood from a great distance, as all the trees, for twenty miles round Jerusalem, had already been destroyed. On the 4th of August, a council of war was held to determine whether the Temple should be destroyed or preserved. Most of the officers were for the former alternative, but gave way when they saw that their general was obstinately bent on its preservation. But such was not the will of God, who had doomed it to no common overthrow.

Titus being now in possession of the outer court, fixed on August the 5th for storming the Temple with all his army. But the night before, two desperate sallies were made by the Jews, and, in driving them back the last time, the Romans rushed on after them

into the inner court. One of the soldiers then seized a firebrand, and, mounting on the shoulders of a companion, cast it through a window communicating with the apartments on the north side of the sanctuary. The flames almost immediately burst forth; on beholding which, the Jews raised a cry of despair, and ran to extinguish them.

Titus now hastened to the spot with his officers, and made every exertion for the same purpose, both by voice and action. He entreated, promised, threatened, and even struck his men with his staff; but, for the time, he had lost all authority and influence, and was not heeded by any. The soldiers who flocked from the camp, eagerly joined those already on the spot in destroying the Jews, in increasing the flames, and in stripping the burning pile of its treasured wealth and ornaments. The general, seeing that the soldiers could not be induced to extinguish the flames, went into the holy place with his officers, while the fire was consuming the outer apartments, and had not yet penetrated to the interior. He took out the golden candlesticks, the incense-altar, and the table of shew-bread, with some other sacred furniture, which were afterwards paraded in his triumph at Rome. When he came forth, Titus made one more effort to induce the soldiers to put out the fire, but with as little success as before. On the contrary, they hastened to apply their hands to the sanctuary which he had quitted, and to every part of the sacred structure, till the flames burst forth with redoubled fury in all directions; and, finally, disappointed in the hope he had always cherished, the general withdrew to his quarters.

While the Temple burned, the soldiers cut down every Jew they encountered, and plundered whatever they could lay their hands on. The inner court, and especially the space about the altar, was covered with dead bodies, and blood flowed in streams down to the lower court. The gold plate of the gates and timber-work of the sanctuary, and the precious articles which it contained, afforded them rich spoil ; so immense, indeed was their booty, from this and other spoliations, that gold in Syria speedily fell to one half its former value. In the confusion, the Zealots and robbers, who had the defence of the place, succeeded in forcing their way through the upper city, there to make their last stand. The plundering and butchering being over for the present, the Romans carried their standards around the burning Temple, and set them up before the eastern gate, where they offered sacrifices, and saluted Titus as 'Imperator.' Thus was destroyed the glorious edifice of which our Lord foretold to his disciples, who pointed out its 'goodly stones' with admiration, that 'the days shall come in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another that shall not be thrown down.' (Luke xxi. 6.)

Passing over some intermediate circumstances, I have now only to state, that the Upper City, or Mount Zion, the last refuge of the factious, was taken by the Romans on Sunday, September 2nd. Even the Zealots had now despaired ; the fall of the Temple assured them that they were indeed abandoned by God. Many, therefore, convinced that the Upper City would be taken, went to hide themselves in the cellars, vaults, and sewers ; others retired to the castle ; and

but few were left to offer but a feeble resistance to the Romans.

A breach was soon made, and the Jews fled; but, instead of hastening to the towers, which were very strong, and in which nothing but famine could have reduced them, they ran to the valley of Siloam, with the design of forcing their way into the open country, through the Roman wall. In this desperate undertaking, they were joined even by the men already in the towers, which they hastily abandoned to join their fleeing comrades. But they were all repulsed by the Roman guards at the wall, and obliged to hasten for shelter to the vaults, caverns, sinks, and common sewers, hoping, with those who had resorted to such shelter in the first instance, that they should be able to preserve existence till the Roman forces were withdrawn from the desolated city. All the rest whom the Romans could find were put to death, with the exception of the most vigorous and beautiful, who were reserved, as captives, for future calamities worse than present death. The city was set on fire; but so great was the slaughter, that the flames were kept under by the blood of the slain, and it was not till night that the conflagration became general.

"After Titus had accomplished his mission of vengeance against a guilty people, he departed for Cæsarea, leaving, however, forces, under Terentius Rufus, to complete the work of devastation, and to explore the retreats of those who had hid themselves with much treasure. Great numbers were found, and slain; and others came forth of their own accord,

being no longer able to endure the extremity of famine. Among these, were John and Simon. The former appeared first, and begged his life, which was granted. Simon, whose retreat was better stored with provisions, held out till the end of October, when he was seen on the ruins of the Temple, arrayed in a white robe and purple mantle. The Romans were astonished at this apparition, but, learning who he was, they took him, and sent him in chains to Titus. He and John were reserved to adorn the triumphal pageant with which the conqueror entered Rome, and in which they appeared at the head of seven hundred captives, selected from the rest for the beauty of their personal appearance. After which, Simon was dragged through the imperial city with a rope round his neck, scourged severely, and then put to death with some other Jewish leaders. John, whose life had been granted to him, was sent into perpetual imprisonment.

At Jerusalem, when there was no more blood to shed, and when the fire had done its work, the soldiers proceeded with the work of demolition, razing even to the ground all its noble structures, its walls and fortresses, its palaces and towers. Nothing was left save a piece of the western wall, to serve as a rampart to the tenth legion; and the towers of Hippicos, Phasael, and Mariamne, to perpetuate the glory of the conqueror, by evincing the strength and splendour of the city he had overthrown. Thus fell, and for ever, the metropolis of the Jewish state.

## VICTORIES OF ALEXANDER.



Alexander Crossing the Granicus.

## CHAPTER VI.

I AM now about to relate to you some of the wonderful victories of one of the greatest of conquerors, Alexander the Great. But I would at the same time wish it to be understood that I am no friend of war.

Alexander was the son of Philip, King of Macedon, and his ruling passion from the earliest years was ambition. His tutor was the celebrated Aristotle, and he learned from him all the philosophy of those heathen times, which made him a proficient in rhetoric and oratory. He was also fond of poetry, especially the heroic verses of Homer, and he enclosed the Iliad in a casket of inestimable value, which he laid with his sword every night under his pillow. Alexander was also a lover of the arts and sciences ; and painting, sculpture and architecture flourished during his reign.

In temper Alexander was imperious, resolute, and very firm in his opinions. He liked to have his own way, and was impatient of contradiction ; but he was not without generous and noble emotions, and he loved truth and justice in those under his command.

Upon his accession to the throne of Macedon, on the death of his father, the barbarous nations whom Philip had subdued threatened the Macedonian empire with destruction. They dethroned the kings set over them, and united against Alexander, who marched his troops with the greatest expedition to the banks of the Danube, which he crossed in one night, and defeated several of the confederate kings in a great battle.

While Alexander was thus employed in vanquishing the barbarous nations, the more civilised states of Greece revolted, to which they were animated by the powerful oratory of Demosthenes, who formed a powerful alliance against him. But Alexander advanced with great rapidity, and in a short time appeared with his army before the walls of Thebes. The Thebans, with great bravery, made a

sally, but after a desperate battle Alexander gained possession of the city and gave it up to plunder.

The usual cruelty and wickedness which takes place in a city given up to pillage, took place at Thebes. Among the many instances of these horrors of war, was one that deserves to be related. Some of Alexander's Thracian soldiers had destroyed the house of a noble lady named Timoclea, and having slain her brother and father, brutally ill-used her. An officer of the troops having further committed the most wicked outrage, obliged her to confess under pain of instant death where she had hid her principal treasure. She directed the wretch to a well in the garden. Into this he eagerly descended, when the heroic woman raised a large stone in her arms, and threw it upon him, which killed him instantly.

The Thracian soldiers carried the lady before Alexander, who, perceiving her to be a lady of noble lineage by the haughty air she assumed, asked her who she was. She replied, "I am sister of Theaganes, who fought against Philip for the liberty of Greece, and was killed in the battle of Chæronea." Alexander, instead of punishing her for killing one of his officers, commended her courage, and ordered her to be set at liberty.

But Alexander did not behave with the same magnanimity to the conquered city, for he immediately ordered it to be destroyed. However, he set at liberty the parents and the descendants of Pindar, the celebrated poet, who was so great an honour to Greece; but all the rest of the inhabitants, about thirty thousand, he sold, and upwards of six thousand had been killed in battle.

This severity spread the terror of Alexander's arms throughout all Greece; and immediately the governors and princes of cities, with the most learned men of the age, the philosophers, waited upon Alexander. But among the latter, one refused to leave his house. This was Diogenes, the cynic, who said, "If Alexander requires to see me, he will find me at home." The home was nothing more than a large tub, in which the philosopher used to live, like a dog in his kennel.

Alexander, to humour this whim, at last made the philosopher a visit, and was surprised to see this great man in such poverty; and after saluting him in a kind and affable manner, asked him what he could do for him. "Remove yourself," said Diogenes, "out of my sunshine. Do not take from me what you cannot give." This answer raised the contempt and indignation of the courtiers. Alexander, however, replied to their murmurs—"Were I not Alexander, I would be Diogenes."

Alexander now directed his thoughts to the conquest of Asia; but before he set out was determined to consult the oracle of Apollo. He therefore proceeded to Delphos, but he arrived there during those black days marked in the calendar as *unfortunate*,—a season in which it was forbidden to consult the Oracle; and accordingly the priestess refused to go to the temple. But Alexander, who would bear no contradiction, took her forcibly by the arm, and led her towards the altar; and she then cried out, "My son, thou art invincible." This was sufficient: and catching at the words, which he considered oracular, he immediately set out for Macedonia, in order to make preparations for his great expedition.

Alexander having settled his affairs at Macedonia, set out for Asia, at the head of an army of thirty thousand foot, and six thousand horse—a small force, but they were all veterans. He arrived at Sestos after twenty days' march, and crossed from Sestos to Abydos by means of galleys and flat-bottomed vessels. When in the middle of the Hellespont he sacrificed a bull to Neptune and the Nereids, and made libations in the sea from a golden cup. He then threw therein his javelin in token of his sovereignty, and leaping from the ship completely armed, landed in Asia.

When he came within a short distance of the city of Lampsachus, which he had determined to destroy, to punish the rebellion of its inhabitants, he saw Anaximenes, the celebrated historian, a native of the city, and an old friend of Philip, Alexander's father. He had also been preceptor to Alexander when a boy. The king, suspecting that his object was to implore him to save the city, was determined not to do so; and calling for his priest, swore a solemn oath before the gods that he would never grant the request he was about to make. "The favour I have to desire of you," replied the historian, "is, that you would destroy Lampsachus and send its inhabitants into slavery." By this cunning evasion the historian saved his country.

At last Alexander arrived on the banks of the Granicus, a river of Phrygia. The Satrapes, or Lieutenants of Darius, here met him to dispute his passage. Their army consisted of upwards of a hundred thousand foot, and ten thousand horse. This horse lined the whole of the opposite shore, and formed an expanded front in order to oppose him. The foot

was posted behind, and consisted chiefly of Greeks in the service of Darius.

The two armies continued for some time looking at each other on the banks of the river—the Persians waiting till the Macedonians should enter it, in order to charge them with the greater advantage. Upon this Alexander ordered his horse to be brought; and having exhorted his noblemen and captains to behave gallantly, set spurs to his charger and dashed onwards, the trumpets sounding, and the whole army raising cries of joy.

The Persians let fly their arrows thicker than hail ; but the Macedonians pressed through them with great quickness. At first the more advanced squadrons gave ground ; but these being presently reinforced by Alexander in person, they gave way and made room for the whole of the Macedonian army to pass the river, and the Persians were attacked on all sides.

Alexander first charged the thickest post of the enemies' horse, in which the generals fought. He was himself particularly conspicuous by his shield and helmet of dazzling steel. The charge was very furious around him, and although only horse were engaged, they fought hand to hand in desperate combat without giving way at either side. Spithrobates, lieutenant-governor of Ionia, and son-in-law to Darius, distinguished himself above all the Persian generals. He was surrounded by forty Persian noblemen of experienced valour, who surrounded him on all sides, and carried terror whichever way they moved. Alexander observing in what a gallant manner he distinguished himself, clapped spurs to his horse, and

advanced towards him. They immediately engaged, and each having thrown a javelin, wounded the other slightly. Spithrobates then fell furiously, sword in hand, upon Alexander, who, being prepared, thrust at him with his spear, and he fell dead from his horse. Rosace, brother to Spithrobates, anxious to revenge his death, charged boldly towards Alexander, and gave him so furious a blow with his battle-axe, that he beat off his plume, and clove his helmet to his scull. As he was about to repeat the blow, Clitus, an old veteran, and bosom friend of Alexander, struck off the assailant's hand with one blow of his scymeter, and thus saved his sovereign's life.

The danger to which Alexander had been exposed, and the brave manner in which he had fought, inspired his Macedonians with fresh courage; and although the Persians showered their darts and javelins thicker than hail, they could not succeed in driving them back. They pressed forward like a torrent into the centre of the army. They directed their blows to the faces of their enemies, who, after a short resistance, turned about and fled.

Alexander now charged the foot with the same boldness and vigour. They had retreated to a hill at a short distance, but the Macedonian phalanx charged into this body of foot, and cut the greatest number of them to pieces, except two thousand who were taken prisoners. A great number of Persian commanders lay dead on the spot, and on the side of the Macedonians, twenty-five of the royal horse were killed at the first attack, about sixty of the inferior horse, and not more than thirty foot, who the next day, were all laid with their arms

and equipages in one grave. And Alexander granted an exemption to their fathers and children from every kind of service ; he also granted the rites of sepulture to the grandees of Persia, and did not even refuse it to such Greeks as died in the Persian service ; but all the prisoners he put in chains, and sent them to work as slaves in Macedonia.

Alexander shared his victory with the Greeks, who were his allies in this battle ; and sent to the Athenians 900 silver shields, being part of the plunder taken from the enemy, and caused the following inscription to be placed on the rest of the spoil : "Alexander, son of Philip, with the Greeks, gained these spoils from the barbarians of Asia." But the greater part of the gold and silver plate, jewels, and purple carpets, for which Persia was so celebrated, with the filial duty of a son, he sent to his mother.

After the battle of the Granicus, Alexander advanced through the greater part of Asia, conquering as he went. At the same time, Darius himself was advancing to meet him, with a prodigious army, which threatened to overwhelm by numbers the Macedonians with their Greek allies.

Darius, at the head of 600,000 men, and surrounded with pomp and splendour, fancied he was invulnerable to the shafts of fortune, and encamped his vast host on the plains of Syria. But fearing that Alexander might escape him, he determined to leave the plains and enter the Cilician passes, where he was entrenched, being determined to crush him with his numerous host. Alexander had chosen a spot of ground between high mountains, not above

a mile in width, by which the Macedonians had room for their whole army to manoeuvre, while the Persians could only bring a portion of theirs into action.

The spot where the battle was fought lay near the city of Issus, and was bounded by mountains on one side and the sea on the other. The river Pinarius ran through the middle of it.

Alexander arrived at midnight, and went to the top of a mountain, and there, by torchlight, sacrificed, after the manner of his country, to the gods of the place. By daybreak his army was at their several posts. He placed himself at the head of the Macedonian phalanx, and commanded in person the right wing.

Darius, upon his approach, ordered 30,000 horse and 20,000 archers to cross the river, that he might have more room for the rest of his army. In its centre he posted the 30,000 Greeks in his service, who were little inferior in bravery to the Macedonian phalanx, with 30,000 Cordacians on their right, and as many on their left, the field of battle not being able to contain a greater number : these were all heavily armed. On the mountains, to the left, opposite to Alexander's right wing, Darius posted 20,000 light troops. The two armies being thus drawn up in order of battle, Alexander rode along the ranks, encouraging his soldiers, and calling upon his generals to signalize themselves. The Greeks he animated by calling to their remembrance the battles of Thermopylae, of Salamis, and of Plateæ ; and then he pointed out to them the enemy's army, which shone with gold and splendour, and told them that all this wealth, and the whole of Persia, was theirs,



Alexander protected by Parmenio.

if they chose to fight bravely. To this the soldiers responded with loud shouts.

The Macedonians now advanced slowly; but when they were within bow-shot, Alexander commanded all his right wing to plunge into the river, that they might be less exposed to the enemy's arrows. When they emerged from the river, they charged the Persians sword in hand; and Alexander observing the chariot of Darius, raised high above the rest, charged impetuously towards it; but Oxathnes, brother to

the Persian king, rushed before his chariot. Alexander was beaten down upon his knees, but Parmenio coming up, covered him with his shield. At the same time, the horses of Darius began to kick and plunge from the wounds they had received, and were in danger of overturning the king, who leaped down, and mounted another chariot. "The king has fallen!" was uttered from rank to rank, and the Persians fled.

At the same time, the right wing of the Persian cavalry was defeated by the Thessalian horse, and this completed the defeat of the army. Darius, as soon as he saw his left wing broken, retreated in the chariot he had mounted; but getting into some craggy places, he threw down his bow, shield, and royal mantle, and mounted on horseback, and fled with precipitation, leaving his prodigious army to its fate.

The whole of the camp spoil, together with the wife and family of Darius, fell into the hands of the conquerors. The Persians lost a hundred thousand foot, and above thirty thousand horse; but the number on Alexander's side did not exceed a thousand in all.

After the battle, Alexander, with noble magnanimity, went to the tent of Darius, and condoled with the queen for the loss she had sustained. He also addressed many words of comfort to the princesses; and took Darius's son in his arms. The little child, without discovering the least terror, embraced Alexander, who, affected with this affection, turned to Hephaeston, and said, "O that Darius had some portion of his tenderness!"

It would have been well for the fame of Alexander

had he always behaved in the same discreet and generous manner. But, alas! success and conquest have turned the best of men into tyrants, and sometimes made them foolishly impious. Such was the case with this hero.

Alexander gave a great feast in honour of his victories ; and in the heat of the entertainment, when his head was flushed with drinking, began to celebrate his own exploits in an arrogant manner, taking to himself the glory of all the successes of the troops, and going so far as to declare that even the victories of Philip, his father, were due to himself. Clytus, an old and faithful general, who had saved Alexander's life in battle, attempted to remonstrate, and related the actions of Philip in a glowing manner, declaring that his wars in Greece equalled, if they did not eclipse, those of Alexander ; and asserted that the destruction of Thebes was but a trifling affair compared with Philip's victories over the Athenians.

Upon this Alexander retorted upon Clytus, upbraiding him for a want of success in some affairs, and reproached him with cowardice. The old soldier's eyes flashed fire, and he replied boldly, "Coward or not, it was this hand that saved you at the battle of the Granicus. It is the blood and wounds of these very Macedonians whom you accuse of cowardice, that raised you to your grandeur, and gave you all your glory. But the tragical end of Parmenio shows us what we have to expect from thy gratitude."

"Go hence!" cried the king, in a voice inarticulate with rage ; and, snatching up a javelin, he would have killed Clytus on the spot, had he not been held back by the surrounding officers, who forced the offender out of the hall. Clytus, however, immediately



Death of Clytus.

returned by a side door, and continued his taunts, telling Alexander that he could no longer have free-born men at his table, and would do well to pass the remainder of his life among barbarians and slaves, who would lick the dust from his feet like dogs, and bow before his Persian girdle and white robes. This was too much for the haughty monarch ; and seizing his javelin, he hurled it with such force, and such an unerring aim, that Clytus fell dead at his feet.

As soon as the brave old soldier fell, and Alexander heard that he was dead, his crime appeared to him in all its blackness. He had murdered a man who had always served him faithfully, and who had saved his life. He threw himself upon the dead body, forced out the javelin, and would have dispatched himself with it, had not the guards, who rushed in upon him, forcibly carried him away.

Thus Alexander, who had overcome so many nations, was himself conquered by two vices—anger and intemperance, which threw a blight over the glory of his greatest actions. “The reason of this,” says Seneca, “is, he endeavoured more to vanquish others than to subdue himself—not knowing that to triumph over our passions is, of all conquests, the most glorious.”

After this event Alexander advanced into India, besieged and took several cities considered impregnable. He then crossed the Indus and the Hydaspes, gave battle to Porus, whom he vanquished. He then marched through India, established Greek colonies, and built, according to Plutarch, seventy towns, one of which he called Bucephala, after his horse. Intoxicated by success, he intended to advance as far as the Ganges, when the murmurs of his army compelled him to return, in doing which he was exposed to great dangers.

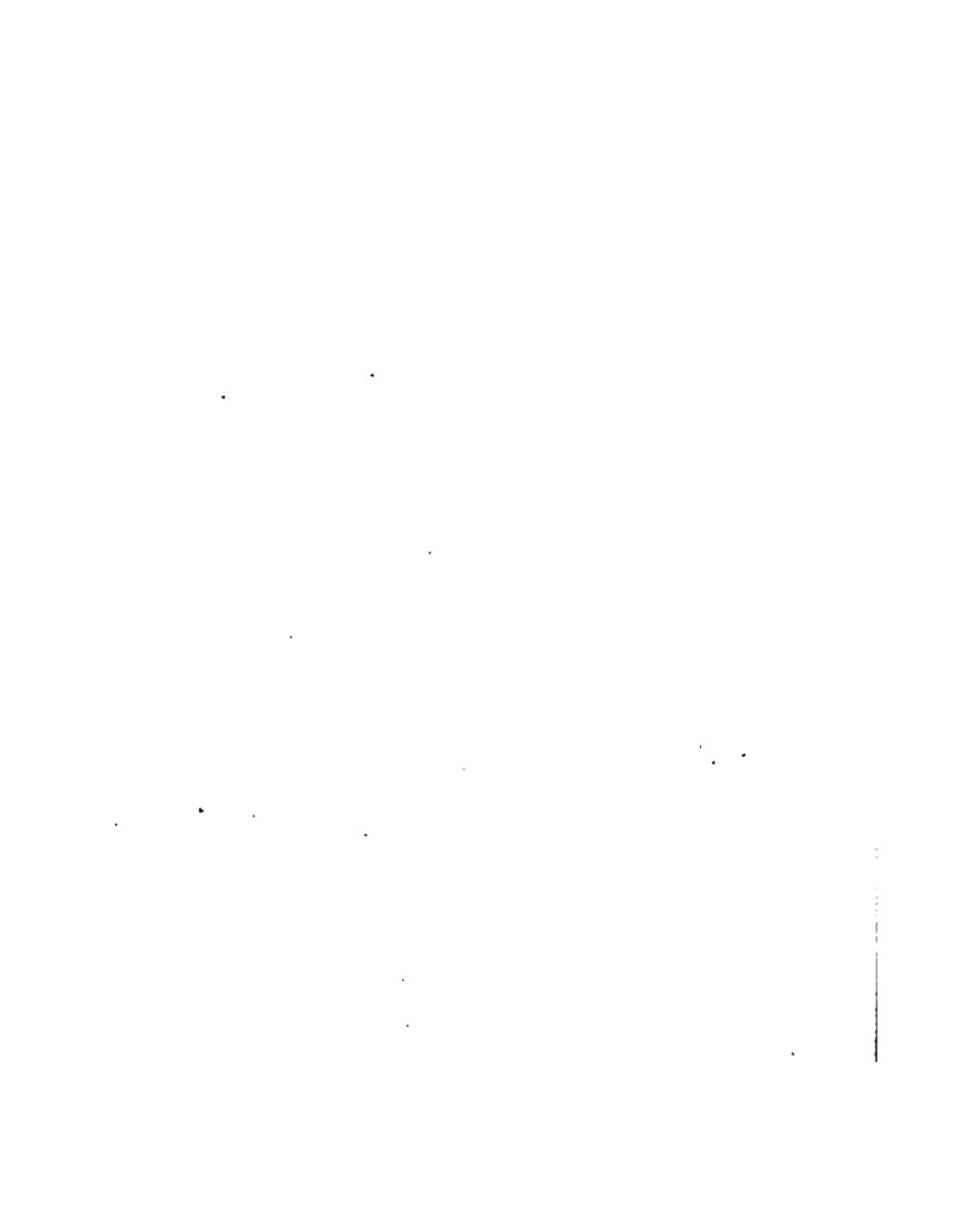
When he reached the Hydaspes, he sent part of his army down the river, while the rest proceeded along its banks. On his march he encountered several Indian princes, by one of whom he was severely wounded. Having recovered, he continued his march, sailed down the Indus, and thus reached

the sea. Nearchus, his admiral, sailed thence to the Persian Gulf, while Alexander directed his march to Babylon. He had to wander through immense deserts, in which the greater part of his army, destitute of water and food, perished on the sands.

At last the great conqueror reached Babylon ; and here he gave himself up to the solemnising of new festivals, banqueting and rejoicing. At one of these he spent the whole night in carousing and drinking, to an enormous extent. He at last called for Hercules' cup, which held above a quart of wine. This he drank off, pledging one or other of the company, and fell down at last in a state of the most shocking intoxication.

The next day he was seized with a fever, which continued for several days. At last, finding himself beyond all hope, and his voice beginning to fail, he drew his ring from his finger, and gave it to Perdicas, with orders to convey his corpse to the Temple of Ammon for divine honours. His principal courtiers asked him to whom he left his kingdom. He replied—"To the most worthy!" He was asked by Perdicas when he would have the divine honours paid to him ; and he replied, "When you are happy ;" and with these words he expired.

At this period Alexander was only thirty-two years old, of which he had reigned twelve. His wars were of the most destructive kind, and he was reckless of blood. Let us pray that the days of war and bloodshed are now nearly at an end, and that mere conquerors will be removed from the proud place they occupy in the annals of nations, and be supplanted by benefactors to our species.





THE CRUSADE<sup>S</sup>.

## TALES OF THE CRUSADES.

### PETER THE HERMIT.

"The cross is lying low,  
Christian, awake;  
Draw the sword and bend the bow,  
For Christ's dear sake!  
They pierce him, bruise him, do him shame,  
And curse his name,  
Soldier awake! awake!"

HERBERT.



THE CRUSADES are the wars which were carried on by the Christian nations of the West, from the end of the eleventh to the end of the thirteenth century. They were called crusades, because all the warriors who followed the holy banner wore the sign of the cross. The Christian and Mohammedan nations had been during a long period in a state of war, not only in Asia but also in Europe, where the Moors (Mohammedans by religion) had taken possession of a part of the Spanish Peninsula. The nations of the West

were grieved that the Holy Land, where Jesus had lived, taught, and died for mankind—where poor pilgrims resorted to pour out their sorrows, and ask for aid from above, at the tomb of their Saviour—should be in the power of unbelievers, for the pilgrims, on their return, related the dangers they had encountered. The Caliph Hakim was particularly described as a second Nero ; being the son of a Christian woman he nevertheless shed the blood of Christians without mercy, to prevent the suspicion of his being secretly attached to that religion. These representations kindled the religious zeal of Christian Europe into a flame, and a general ardour was awakened to deliver the sepulchre of Christ from the hands of the infidels.

In order for my young friends to understand this general excitement, they must be informed that at this period, the confusion and desolation which had followed the irruption of the barbarians into the south and west of Europe had ceased, and the dawn of civilization and intellectual cultivation had commenced. In this mental twilight, men were just in a state to receive a strong religious excitement. The idea of the Virgin, too, which deified all that was pure and holy in woman, harmonised well with the Teutonic reverence for the female sex, and to fight in her cause was gratifying to the spirit of chivalry.

The undisciplined minds of men were also bent upon adventure, and their imaginations were easily roused by the reports of the riches of the East ; and as the joys of Paradise were promised by the highest authorities in religion to all who fell in the holy cause, it was not wonderful that large numbers of enthusiasts should be eager to rush forward in a

cause so congenial to their feelings, and which promised such abundant rewards, both temporal and eternal ; and thus, the whole of Europe was stirred as with a mighty spirit, and her children were impelled into the East.

Here, on what they considered the holiest ground, many of our most vigorous and warlike princes sought martyrdom or glory. Richard Cœur-de-Lion is chiefly remarked for his martial pilgrimage to the Holy Land. Robert Curthose, eldest son of William the Conqueror ; Richard, Earl of Cornwall, the brother of Henry III. ; and the all-praised Edward, afterwards King Edward I., were heroical votaries of the cross ; and the most noble youth of England followed the " pattern of these kings," and were celebrated in the ranks of Christian knights. They rested their best hopes of never-dying honour on their ardour in

" That cause, that should all wars begin and end!"

Their love of pilgrimages and crusades appears in their sepulchral monuments. On contemplating the cross-legged figures in the aisles of our venerable cathedrals, the days of chivalry rise before us in awful and splendid recollections ; we feel and own the genius of the place, and trace, with imaginative thought, the fortunes of the soldier of Christ, from the joyful moment of his investment with the sacred badge to the hour of his triumph or death. His contempt of a perilous march, and his heroic ardour in the Syrian fields, awe and command our admiration ; while his sacrifice of country and kindred throws an air of sublime devotedness round his exploits and

forbids us from censuring with severity the madness of his enterprise. As in his life, at the call of religion he unsheathed the sword and vowed the destruction of the faithless ; so in his death, his marble hand grasps the hilt and his countenance looks defiance and disdain. The Lion-hearted Plantagenet

---

“ did perform  
Beyond thought’s compass deeds of high emprise;  
And earned himself a name, by his own sword,  
Among the scalps of Christ-denying Turks  
Worthy all time!

Peter of Amiens or Peter the Hermit, was the immediate cause of the first crusade. In his youth he had been a soldier, and in atonement for the irregularities of his early life, he became a priest and an anchorite—a solitary liver in woods and caverns ;\* and as the last means of expiating former sins, he resolved to undergo the pains and perils of a journey to the Holy Land. When he arrived at Jerusalem, he went through the usual course of prayers and penances ; and while he hovered over the sacred scenes of our Lord’s life and death, he beheld on all sides the sacrilegious and inhuman barbarities of the Turks towards the unoffending Christians. He saw them bastinadoed or strangled, their eyes put out, or their members lopped off with cruel severity, while the “ sacred places”—the spots celebrated by the Redeemer of mankind, were profaned and violated ; and his heart burned with a desire to redress the distresses of the faithful. His imagination pictured the Holy Land as the land of Christianity, and he believed himself to be invested with a divine

\* Petrarch De Vita Solit., lib. ii., sec. 4.

authority and commission, to bring them salvation by the force of arms.

To POPE URBAN the Second, the Hermit now appealed. He gave him a description of the unhappy Christians, and presented a petition from the Patriarch of Jerusalem in favour of his brethren. The Pope declared to the Council, which was held at Placenza, in the open air, on account of the number of people assembled, the message which Christ had sent through PETER THE HERMIT. He ascended the pulpit, and in the most flowing and energetic language called upon his hearers to devote their lives for their suffering brethren—to arouse themselves against their enemies, the Turks, that they might be extolled through all ages, and be rewarded beyond all time. To those present he said,\* “In God’s name I command this,—to the absent I enjoin it! Let such as are going to fight for the cross bear it on their garments, that they may outwardly demonstrate the love arising from their inward faith; enjoying by the gift of God, and the privilege of St. Peter, absolution from all other crimes, and they shall receive, after death, the crown of martyrdom! Let the noted valour of the French advance, which shall affright the whole world by the terror of its name! Remember the saying of God, ‘Narrow is the way that leadeth unto life!’ Take the way of peril—let it be dangerous with death—let it be terrible and dark—it is the path that leads to life! Lay down your lives for the brotherhood, and receive the reward, even the salvation of your souls—rid God’s sanctuary of the wicked—expel the robbe

\* William of Malmesbury, p. 410-415.

redeem the pious, protect the weak, support the just ! Think on the fetters, the groans, the dying groans of your martyred brethren ! Think of the sepulchre of your Lord *profaned* ! Think of the sacred cross on which man was redeemed, now in the hands of the infidels, bearing their scoffs and scorn ! Think on these and advance, my brethren—advance to the rescue for your Lord—advance and conquer in the name of God !”

Cries of “*Deus vult !*” “*Deus lo vult !*” “*Dieux et vult !*” interrupted the Pontiff. He then raised his eyes to heaven in thankfulness, and by the motion of his hand commanding silence, he thus proceeded : “ Dearest brethren, to-day is verified the scriptural promise, that where two or three are gathered together in the name of Christ, he will be with them. Let the very words, then, which his spirit has dictated be your cry of war. When you attack the enemy, let the words resound from every side, ‘*Deus vult ! Deus vult !*’\* Let every one mark on his breast or back the sign of our Lord’s cross, in order that the saying may be fulfilled : ‘ He who takes up the cross and follows me, is worthy of me.’”†

Tears, and groans, and acclamations of assent and applause were the answers of the Christian multitude to the exhortation of their spiritual lord. The whole assembly knelt, and the Cardinal Gregory poured forth in their name a general confession of sins. Every one smote his breast in sorrow, and the Pope, stretching

\* This expression was for some time the war cry of the first crusaders.

† These additions to Malmsbury’s report of the speech have been taken from Robert Monachus, p. 31 in Bongarsius.

forth his hand, absolved and blessed them. Adhemar, Bishop of Puy, was the first person who solicited a cross from the Pope. One of red cloth was affixed to his right shoulder, and immediately great numbers of the assembly were invested with the signs of the new character, and the whole inspired, as it were, with one great impulse for the deliverance of the cross and the sepulchre.

Peter did not consider his mission accomplished. He now traversed Italy and France. Although small and mean in personal appearance, and with a face thin and care-worn, and a back bent with austerities, his dark eye spoke the fire that dwelt in his soul, and the illumination of a divine mission. His dress expressed abasement and mortification—it was only a coarse woollen shirt, and a hermit's mantle. His mode of living was abstemious; but he no longer dealt in penances and mortifications to others, but distributed among the poor those gifts which gratitude showered upon himself. He reclaimed the sinner, terminated disputes, and sowed the germs of virtue. He was everywhere hailed and esteemed as the man of God, and even the hairs which fell from his mule were treasured by the people as relics worthy of preservation.

The preaching of Peter roused all Christendom. It turned some nations from their intestine discord to foreign war. The military of France thought they heard the voice of Charlemagne calling the French to glory. The religious fanatic listened to every call of superstition. Every wonderful event in the natural world was regarded as an indication of the divine will. Meteors and stars pointed at or fell on the road to Jerusalem. The skies were

involved in flames—fiery crosses were seen in the air—and marshalled hosts appeared triumphing over the enemies of the Christian faith. Man fully responded to the supposed calls of God, and all pressed forward to join the crusades. Monks threw aside their black habits for the soldier's mail, and issued from their cloisters full of the spirit of holy warriors. Criminals were released that they might expiate all their sins against the world by the service of the cross. Murderers, robbers, and pirates quitted their iniquitous pursuits, and declared they would wash away their sins in the blood of the infidels. In short, thousands and millions of armed saints and sinners roused themselves to fight the battles of their Lord, and to redeem the sepulchre of Christ.

The first body of the champions of the cross consisted of twenty thousand foot, and only eight horsemen, and were led by Walter, a poor gentleman of Burgundy, and these swept along from France to Hungary; but as the flame of this holy zeal had not spread into Bulgaria, the people regarded the crusaders only as savage intruders, and attacked them without mercy in various places. On one occasion, the pilgrims fled into a church, in certainty that the Bulgarians would never spill blood in the house of God. But though they would not spill blood they set the edifice on fire, and those within it were burnt to death, while Walter and a few of his associates escaped through the woods of Bulgaria, and found their way to Constantinople.

Peter the Hermit, accompanied by forty thousand men, women, and children of all nations and languages, followed the route of Walter in a peaceable

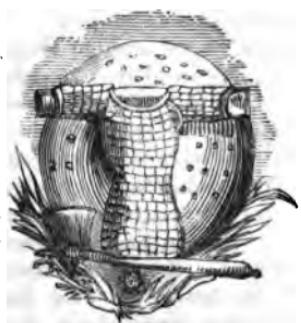
manner ; but when they beheld the arms and crosses of Walter's party set up on the battlements of the town of Malleville as trophies of victory, the sight of them awoke their zeal and kindled it into revenge. A furious assault was made upon the place, seven thousand Hungarians were slain ; the town was abandoned to pillage, and the most savage excesses committed. But upon Peter endeavouring to scale the walls of Nissa, above ten thousand of the rabble were either slain, taken prisoners, or fled.

The remnant of this host, now reduced to about twenty-five thousand people, proceeded onwards, wretched and half-starved, almost without arms, and quite destitute of money, till at last they reached Philippopolis. Here they were supplied with necessaries ; but, in return for the kindness afforded them, as soon as they gathered strength they resumed the work of plunder. Palaces and churches were pillaged, villages burnt, the inhabitants destroyed, and Peter lost all authority over his followers. Among the crusaders particularly distinguished for ferocity were ten thousand Normans, or French, who destroyed children at the breast, scattered their quivering limbs in the air, and carried their ravages to the walls of Nice. But here the Turks poured on the disorderly multitude. They pressed towards the camp, sacrificed the priests at the Christian altars, and reserved for the seraglio such of the women as were beautiful. They then collected the bones of the multitudes that had fallen, of which they made a lofty hill, that remained for many years a dreadful warning to succeeding bands of crusaders, and thus may be said to have finished the First Crusade.

## CAPTURE OF NICE.

“——God wills it—we perform his work.  
Our swords are but his instruments—our lives  
For ever in his keeping. Now, strike home,  
And let the bloody sword reap us our way,  
Like sickles in the harvest.”

CALDERON.



A well-conducted regular army was at last appointed to the crusades, consisting of eighty thousand men, headed by Godfrey of Bouillon; Hugh, brother of Philip, king of France; Baldwin, brother of Godfrey; Robert of Flanders, Raymond of Toulouse, and other heroes. With this army

the experienced commanders traversed Germany and Hungary, passed over the strait of Gallipoli, and, gathering strength and accession of number as they marched along; in the month of May, 1097, they encamped before Nice.

If early writers can be credited, seven hundred thousand was the number of soldiers and pilgrims, and one hundred thousand horsemen clad in mail. According to the customs of chivalry, such of the warriors as were knights were attended by their esquires, who carried their lances, their golden and ornamented shields, and led the fiery steeds on which

the cavaliers rode during the battle. Nor was this equipment complete unless each equestrian soldier was accompanied and supported by some men at arms and infantry who bore the standard.

The offensive weapons of the cavalry were iron maces, lances, and swords. The bow was the principal weapon of the foot soldiers, who, in agreement with the tactics of the day, formed the first line of the army, and discharged large flights of arrows and bolts until the heavy armed troops engaged.

The city of Nice was situated on an extensive plain, and owed its strength almost entirely to military art. It was surrounded by double walls of immense thickness, upon which upwards of three hundred and fifty towers stood at equal intervals. Artificial dykes from the lake Ascanius were also interposed, and massive battlements frowned upon the crusaders as they advanced; and the fanged jaws of the dreadful portcullis grinned at them in defiance, while the banners of the Moslems were proudly displayed on every vantage point of eminence.

The mighty mass of the crusaders surrounded the city on all sides. Godfrey was on the north, and Bohemond on the south; while on the east and west, Hugh, the two Roberts, and Stephen of Chartres, with Raymond of Toulouse, drew up their forces. The crusaders were sufficiently numerous to assault the whole of the walls. They erected high wooden towers, the belfrois, or beffreys, so often used in the middle ages. These consisted of exceedingly stout masses of solid timber, cramped together with iron, and divided into several stories, which were occupied with archers, slingers, and cross-bow men; while their summits, which were on a level with the walls

of the city, were occupied with armed warriors, ready to leap upon the battlements of the besieged. These towers were usually raised on four wheels, and covered over with boiled horse or bullock skins, to protect them from the Greek fire, with which they were sometimes assailed.

When the attack began, these towers were impelled against the stone towers of the city, and the engagements between the Christians and the Musselmans were hand to hand. Godfrey, with a chosen band, ascended one of them and leaped upon the walls, dealing havoc and death to all around. The infidels crouched before him, or flew on all sides. Scores of brave knights were in the act of following their leader; but the besieged, by means of one of their defensive engines, grappled the tower, and with a force that shook the walls of the city to their foundation, overthrew it in one vast ruin; and immediately, with a loud shout, thousands of Moslems turned their scymitars towards the brave band, who were carving their passage through the masses of men who crowded the walls. But Godfrey, with his sturdy battle-axe, aided and surrounded by his knights, succeeding in placing the banner of the cross above the gateway; and, in spite of all opposition, dealing death around him, passed triumphantly to the place opposite the next belfroy, and, leaping thereon, made good his retreat, and descended again to his army, amid the plaudits of thousands who had witnessed the exploit.

In the meantime Kelidige Arslair and Le Gukain, Sultan of Rhoum, with fifty thousand experienced troops, had stationed himself in the mountains which overhung the plains of his capital. On intel-

ligence of the assault of the enemy, he immediately resolved upon an immediate irruption into their camp, assisted by a sortie from the city. He poured down his masses upon Godfrey and the French princes with the impetuosity of a hail-storm ; but their dead bodies soon bestrewed the plain, and the Sultan retired, overpowered with the splendid military appearance of his enemies—their coats of mail—their ornamented and painted shields—their helmets shining in the sun, and their long ashen lances in their hands ; while he confessed that their courage was like that of lions, and that a thousand of their cavalry would fearlessly charge twenty thousand Turks.

On the next day the siege was renewed with fresh courage ; a sepulchre of the dead was converted into a resting place for the living. The hill of bones, the remains of the former slaughtered crusaders, was made a tower of hostility ; and Henry of Ascha endeavoured to batter down a tower by a machine called a fox.\* But its imperfect construction rendered the attempt abortive. Huge masses of stone were hurled upon it, and it fell, burying numbers beneath its ruins, the commanders alone escaping.

While the siege of Nice was thus going on, the situation of the few Christians that remained within

\* The cunning of the invention, and not the shape of the machine, gave it the name of fox. The foxes were probably of the same class of engines as the cats. The cats were in the form of a covered gallery, fastened to the walls to afford shelter to the sappers. They were also made use of to fill up the ditches, in order that the beffrois might be brought near the walls. When these galleries were defended by towers, they were called *chats-chateis*.

the city was indeed perilous. Exasperated by the furious attacks and partial success of the crusaders, the Moslems began at last to wreak their vengeance upon the poor Christians in their power. Among these was a rich merchant, named Angelo, whose coffers had been ransacked and house plundered by the Turks, for the purpose of protracting the siege. His family consisted of a wife, a son, and two daughters, all sincerely devoted to the Christian faith, and ready to die in its defence. A priest also, named Bernardo, exercised the pious offices of religion under his roof, and here a small band of the Christians congregated, for the purposes of fancied security and social worship.

The Moslems had hitherto been content to plunder the inoffensive Christians—to destroy their property, and to hold them in durance ; but as their affairs became more desperate, a phrenzy of cruelty seemed to arouse them against everything that bore the Christian name. At first, the people at Nice contented themselves with dragging up with iron hooks\* the bodies of the Christians slain under the walls of the city, and having stripped them of their raiment, mangled them in the most horrible manner, and cast their limbs back upon the besieging camp. After rage had been thus exhausted, they turned their eyes upon such of the living enemies of their faith as were within their power ; and to appal their enemies, bodies of the Nissian Christians were brought almost hourly to the battlements, and there, in the presence of the surrounding army, inhumanly massacred ;

\* William of Malmsbury.

their bodies being either cut in twain by scymitars, or their heads or arms lopped off, the dismembered portions being thrown, quivering with the last agony of life, into the ranks of the besiegers.\*

Not all the supplications, tears, and prayers of Angelo, nor the exertions of Bernardo, could put a stop to these atrocities. Vainly did the old man represent to the sultan governor that he had on former occasions both lent and given large sums to aid him against his enemies; that he was now ready to give up all his possessions (and they were large ones), both at Antioch and other places, for the redemption of his brethren; and that he was willing, on his own part, to endure all imprisonment, torture, or even death itself, if safety could be in this way obtained for them. But the Moslem was inexorable, and turned from him with a bitter frown; and, gnashing his teeth, immediately gave orders for another sacrifice; and swore by the prophet that, unless the invaders withdrew their forces, and came to an accommodation, *every remaining Christian should be crucified on the tops of the highest towers.*

Horror-struck, but yet tranquil, Angelo and Bernardo retired from the presence of the Moslems; and instead of despairing, their hearts seemed to pant for the crown of martyrdom. They returned to the lurking places of their Christian friends, and communicated the sad intelligence, which was received with groans, cries of despair, tears and exclamations. But as the first excess of terror subsided, Christian heroism took the place of fear; and the pious exhortations of Bernardo,

\* Archbishop of Tyre.

and the full effluence of the spirit of peace, turned the poor trembling victims of tyranny into heroic martyrs for the Christian faith.

The next morning at sunrise the sultan carried his cruel intentions into effect. Twelve of the most wretched of the Christians were dragged forth to the southern walls of the city; and there, on the top of the towers, were nailed to crosses, and suffered to expire in agonies indescribable before the eyes of the crusaders. This roused the indignation of the Christian army, and mass after mass rushed simultaneously to the walls, and perished in hundreds by means of the stones and combustible materials hurled upon them by the Turks.\* Baldwin sounded a grand charge, and attacked the walls more vigorously with his mangonels, which hurled stones of an enormous size; at the same time he endeavoured to mine them under the covers of the *chats-chateils*. But they did not fall; and the crucified were hung out above them, and withered in the last rays of the setting sun.

The next morning the pious Angelo, surrounded by his family and kindred, were seen kneeling round the humble altar of their household hearth in prayer. Here they had remained all the night, watching for the dawn, and imploring God for strength to enable them to pass through the fiery ordeal which was prepared for them. As the sun illuminated the low crypt-like windows, the priest performed the last offices of religion as for dying men, and anointed all with an holy unction, and fortified them with the sacrifice of the mass; while amid the thundering

\* Albertus.

of the battering rams, the clash of arms, the defying cries of the besieged, and the shouts of the besiegers, the solemn hymn of Christian faith and constancy arose.

A throng of armed Turks, half maddened with opium, now rushed upon the victims. Angelo and the priest were first bound together, back to back, and thrown upon a low-wheeled truck; the son and mother and the two daughters shared the same fate; and, surrounded by a vociferous mob, whose shouts of triumph stunned the ear, they were dragged towards the walls of the city.

The sight that now burst upon Angelo, as he reached the battlements, was indeed appalling ; for on every side hung, writhing in torture, burning with thirst, and calling loudly upon death, numbers of his former friends and associates. Below, the glistening spears, shook in vengeance by the *croisés*, looked terrible; while the uproar and the shouts on all sides, and the shaking of the towers beneath, made the scene resemble the end of the world, and the coming again of chaos. In a few minutes the work of cruelty commenced. The priest first, and then the merchant, were nailed to rude crosses; but just as the executioners were in the act of raising them above the battlements, the whole tower shook as with an earthquake, and fell a tremendous ruin to the earth.

Godfrey had not been idle during the night; for, under the cover of a *chat-chateil*, a skilful Lombard did more towards taking the stubborn city than the rest of the army. He and his associates had loosened, without pulling down, the foundations of the tower, and supported the tottering fabric with

logs of wood. The cavities were then filled with explosive matter, and the soldiers having set light to it, in a moment the wooden supporters were scattered in the air, and the whole fell with a prodigious noise, leaving a breach for the army to pass over.

The crusaders now rushed to the breach thus providentially made, and saved the noble Angelo and his friends. In the mean time, Alexius, the friend and ally of the crusaders, had gained admission into the city, by offering a treaty to the Turks; and the horrible carnage that might have been expected to follow was thus prevented. Alexius was bountiful of presents to the crusaders; and, after having suffered them to take a brief and hasty glance at the objects of veneration, they departed from the vicinity of the city, and took the road to Antioch, where they arrived October 21, 1097.

## THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH.

“ ————— Wan with woe,  
 Deep famine now hath eaten to the bones,  
 The only feeder. Dull, blank, and stony eyes,  
 Deep sunk within their sockets, with fix'd stare  
 Look hideous ; and the gnashing teeth  
 Are clenched against the fierce and maddening sun,  
 In silent agony. And there they lie,  
 The Christian and the Moslem, side by side ;  
 Twin brothers in affliction and distress,  
 Yet foes to the last throbings of the heart.” MARTIN.



THE city of Antioch, the capital of Syria, was only about four miles in circumference, and extended among hills and mountains. It was surrounded by a wall; and in those places where the mountainous nature of the ground presented no natural defence, the height of the artificial bulwark was more than sixty feet. A deep ditch nearly encompassed the city. The Orontes washed part of the western walls; and opposite to the gates of the north and east, where the crusaders encamped, was a marsh, which had been formed by the waters from the adjacent hills. Upon the approach of the *croisés*, the fortifications had been put into a complete state of defence, and the troops mustered within them amounted to about twenty-five thousand, a third being cavalry.

The crusaders invested the city by forming their camp round the eastern and northern and towards the western sides ; part of the west and all the south were left open to the besieged. The city had five gates, and by this arrangement the gate of the bridge, and the gate of St. George, belonged to the Turks—the other three gates were blockaded.

For some days the crusaders rioted in plenty, totally undisturbed by the people of Antioch. The valleys round the city were fertile in corn and grapes, and herds of cattle were fed in their rich meadows. Three days were lost by the besiegers in preparation ; but the horrors of war soon began. The garrison made frequent sallies from the unblockaded gates, and harassed the foraging parties of the besiegers, who hurled enormous stones, and impelled their battering rams against the walls without effect. A new machine was also invented. It was in the shape of a tower, supported on numerous wheels, and filled with troops. The soldiers of Raymond wheeled it to the gate, but the showers of arrows from the Turks destroyed the assailants—the besieged made a sortie at the same time, and set fire to the artificial tower, which was soon reduced to ashes. Thus all the skill of the crusaders would have been foiled, had they not, in a primitive simplicity of warfare, dug immense stones from a neighbouring rock, and piled them up before the principal gate, so as effectually to blockade the besieged.

But Antioch still defied the crusaders, and the devastation which they had made in the surrounding country recoiled upon themselves. Food and forage declined ; the vicinity of Antioch was exhausted ; and

the wintry season prevented any commerce between the camp and more inland districts.

The sword of the enemy, and the more afflictive scourge of famine, carried off thousands daily. An ox, which at the commencement of the siege was only worth about fifteen shillings, increased in price to four pounds. The price of a lamb or a kid was increased twenty fold. The pods of unripe beans were held as delicacies, and thistles were eaten in common; carrion was openly dressed, and as the siege continued, human flesh was devoured in secret. Thus the horses, which at the beginning of the siege numbered more than seventy thousand, were before Christmas reduced to two thousand.

The Turks, active and vigilant, seized every favourable opportunity of attacking their foes, and succeeded continually in sending spies into the camp, under the disguise of Greeks, Syrians, and Armenians, by which means its condition was reported to the besieged. To stop such conduct Bohemond, it is related upon good authority, slew some Turkish prisoners, and having properly trussed them, roasted them in full sight of the besieged, and having ordered a table to be prepared, sat down and made a meal of their cooked flesh, declaring that famine had no horrors for him while he could live upon such dainty fare.\*

The famine continued, and the *croisés* were in that state of sullen, savage desperation which the extreme of misery often produces. The dead and the dying were spectacles so familiar, that death no longer in-

\* Albertus, 231-2.

spired dread or taught morality ; and wickedness of every kind began to reign paramount. The direst misery prevailed, but nothing could turn the warriors from their purpose. A reinforcement was sent to the Turks, but Raymond of Toulouse prepared to meet it before it came within sight of the city ; and at the head of seven hundred horsemen, all the remains of their once splendid cavalry, they charged upon their foes in a defile among the mountains, and two thousand of the Turks fell. Their heads were then cut off by their ferocious foes, some of which trophies of victory were sent with savage exultation to the enemy, or fixed on stakes round the camp, or shot into the town, in return for the perpetual insults and mockery of its people.

While Europe was engaged with Asia, the republic of Venice sent help and provisions to their brethren. The vessels arrived at the mouth of the Orontes, some miles below Antioch, and a portion of the crusaders under Raymond and Bohemond proceeded thither to escort the provisions to the camp. The Turks prepared an ambuscade of four thousand men to intercept them on their return, and fell upon them furiously in a defile, and their scymitars mowed down the *croisés* in hundreds. But Godfrey hastened to the relief of his brethren, and the Moslems were driven beneath the walls of their city ; and the historians of the battle would induce us to believe that if all the Christian soldiers had fought with the heroic valour of the Dukes of Lorraine and Normandy, few of the Turks would have escaped the edge of their faulchions. Godfrey cut one of his foes through the middle. The upper part of the

body fell to the ground, but so firmly did the horse-man sit that the lower members remained on the saddle, and the affrighted horse galloped into the town. Another wretched Moslem he smote asunder, from the neck to the groin, by taking aim at his head with a sword ; and the weapon not only performed its proscribed duty, but cut entirely through the saddle and the backbone of the horse. The sword of Robert of Normandy cleft the skull of a Saracen from the crown to the shoulders, and seeing one of the parts rolling over the ground, he charitably dismissed it to the lower regions.\* In short, a son of the sultan, twelve emirs, and two thousand men of common rank, fell in this dreadful battle. The Turks came from the city at the earliest dawn of the succeeding day, and having collected the dead bodies of their friends, buried them in the common places of interment without the walls ; but the Christians, now utterly dead to every feeling of humanity, through familiarity with scenes of horror, exhumed the dead bodies, despoiled them of their dresses and ornaments, severed the heads from the trunks, and exposed fifteen hundred of them on pikes to the weeping Turks, in token of victory.

Antioch was now completely shut up, and unable to obtain any succours. The season of spring had returned, and the crusaders opened a communication with the surrounding country ; but the prosperity of the Christians was checked, by the news that the Sultan of Persia was making efforts for the relief of the besieged, and it was agreed that the horrors of the

\* Baldric. 106-7. Raymond, 147. Albertus, 237. -

sword should be stayed. A short truce was concluded, but this the Turks violated ; and having seized a noble cavalier, named Waldo, who, like many of his comrades, had been wandering in the groves of Antioch, the Moslems tortured the Christian and tore his body to pieces. Thus the zeal of the crusaders was inflamed, and the war renewed.

The city of Antioch was not, however, doomed to be taken by assault, for when the defence became most feeble, and when it was less needed, stratagem was called in to the aid of valour. Near the gate of St. George were three towers, which were guarded by three brothers, of a noble Armenian tribe. At the time of the siege of Antioch, Phirouz was the head of this race. He was a man of a low and sordid disposition, and having made religion subservient to his passions, and deserted the faith of his forefathers, he united with the Musselmans. There was an affinity between the characters of Phirouz and Bohemond, the leader of an Italian band of the *croisés*, and in various periods of the siege the accidents of war brought the Italian and the Armenian into intercourse. The crafty traitor pretended that Christ had appeared repeatedly to him in dreams, and exhorted him to deliver up the city to the Christian army ; and offered to put Bohemond in possession of the three towers, which would at once decide the fate of the city. The news of the approach of the Persian succour disposed the council of the crusaders to close with the traitor's proposal, and he was promised the gift of the city, in the event of its conquest and reduction.

By the medium of a son of Phirouz, who was a

Turkish spy in the Christian camp, the plot for the completion of the treachery was settled. The *croisés* were to be admitted by escalade upon the tops of the towers, and in the repose and silence of the night, Bohemond and six thousand of his troops advanced close to the walls. Phirouz lowered down some ropes, to which ladders were speedily affixed and drawn up. At first, however, neither threats nor entreaties could instigate the *croisés* to ascend them ; but at last Bohemond himself mounted the walls. No one followed him, and he was compelled to return to his troops in despair of the success of the undertaking. His reappearance, however, gave courage to his soldiers, and all of them were anxious for the escalade. In their confusion the ladder broke, and only sixty soldiers reached the ramparts, but these men prepared the way for their friends with dreadful effect. They seized the towers, and slew the guards. A postern was then opened, and the whole army entered the city with all the ferocity of triumphant religious zealots, and the insolence of conquerors. The banner of Bohemond was hoisted on a principal eminence. The trumpets brayed the triumph of the Christians, and with the affirmation of "*Deus id vult!*" they commenced the butchery of the sleeping inhabitants.

For some time the Greeks and Armenians were equally exposed, and Turks and Christians were promiscuously slaughtered ; but when the first fury of the assault was over, and a pause was given to murder, the Christians were distinguished from the infidels, and a mark was put upon the dwellings of the former, and their edifices were regarded as sacred.

But with the Turks, the dreadful havoc went on in all the horrors of warfare. The dignity of age—the helplessness of youth—the beauty of women were disregarded by the brutalised victors. Houses were no sanctuaries, and the sight of a mosque added new fuel to the flame of vengeance. The attendants and followers of the camp pillaged the houses as soon as they got within the gates, but the soldiers did not for a while suffer their rapacity to check their thirst for blood. When, however, every species of habitation, from the marble palace to the meanest hovel, had been converted into a scene of slaughter—when the narrow streets and spacious squares were all alike disfigured with human gore, and crowded with mangled carcasses, then the assassins turned robbers and joined in the pillage, and they revelled in all the wealth and luxury of the East. Then the crusaders, changing their fierceness for the more civilised vices of debauchery and drunkenness, a general profligacy prevailed, as shocking by its excesses, and as wicked in the sight of Heaven, as the former carnage.

The Persians were now advancing upon Antioch. The army of the emperor consisted of at least two hundred thousand men, drawn from the remotest parts of the Turkish empire, and inflamed with a religious zeal equal to that of the *croisés*, and the hosts of the Moslem pitched their tents in proud array round the fallen capital. Here, then, the sword was without, and the famine within ; and the Moslems resolved to conquer by starvation, if their scymitars should fail. They took the port of St. Simon ; blockaded the river ; burned the shipping, by which means,

all supplies of provisions were effectually cut off ; and all the distresses of the crusaders before the walls, were nothing when compared with the horrors they suffered now that they were in possession of the city. And the cooped-up wretches drank the blood of their horses for water, fed on garbage and carrion, and absolutely eat each other by lottery; crying all the time, "Not unto us, O Lord, but unto thy name be the praise!"

The seal now seemed to be set on the crusaders. Some gave up the contest and escaped over the walls, to be massacred by the Turks ; while the well-appointed army of Alexius, the Emperor of Greece, which ought to have hastened to the succour of the city, marched to Constantinople, and the fury of the croisés against him was mingled with execrations against Heaven, for not miraculously interfering in the behalf of the cross. Atheism began to prevail. If Heaven was implored, it was that the Greeks might have their portion of eternal torments with the great betrayer Judas.

The soldiers were inanimate and desponding ; they shut themselves up in houses and barricaded them strongly within ; some committed suicide, and others sunk into melancholy and despair. Bohemond set fire to the houses, and the soldiers ran to their quarters, and a military appearance was resumed. But two thousand private dwellings and several churches were destroyed in this dreadful experiment ; and it was at one time feared that the whole city would fall a prey to the flames, like Troy of old.

But though the fire had driven the soldiers to their posts, it could not give spirit to fleshless carcasses or

despairing minds, and the ruin of Christendom seemed inevitable ; but one resource, more powerful than even the sword or fire, remained to be tried, and that resource was superstition. A priest swore on the gospels, that while he was at prayers, Jesus Christ, accompanied by the Virgin and St. Peter appeared to him, and said, "Knowest thou me ?" The priest answered, "No." A cross was then displayed on the head of the Saviour, and the astonished priest acknowledged his Lord.

The Son of man exclaimed :—"I made you masters of Nice ; I opened to you the gates of Antioch ; and, in return for these benefits, you have renounced me and served Satan by debaucheries and wickedness, and therefore I have given you over to your reprobate minds." At these words the Holy Virgin and St. Peter threw themselves at the feet of Jesus, and besought him to have mercy on his votaries. He then said to Peter, "Go tell my people, that if they will return to me, I will return to them ; and in five days in accordance with the five wounds that pierced my body, I will give them help."\*

The priest offered to verify his story by the fiery ordeal ; but the ecclesiastics decided that his oath upon the gospels was sufficient, and published his vision to the multitude. In a few days the temples were crowded, and the streets resounded with psalms and hymns ;—while enthusiasm was at its height, another priest, named Peter Barthelemy, assured the chieftains that the Apostle St. Andrew had appeared to him in a vision, and carried him through the air

\* Albertus, 252.

to the Church of St. Peter, and had shown him the very lance that had pierced the side of Christ. The saint commanded him to tell the army that that weapon would ward off all the attacks of the enemy, and that the Count of Toulouse should support it.

Raymond, therefore, in obedience to this heavenly mission, was appointed to fetch this precious relic from its repository. He was attended by numerous ecclesiastics; and after two days had been spent in holy exercises, fasting, and prayer, all the *croisés* marched in military pomp and religious solemnity to the Church of St. Peter within the city. The streets rang with the sound of martial music, pealed with religious hymns, and the banners of the cross fluttered in the air. The ancient church was encompassed by the splendid array of bishops, knights, and warriors; and Raymond, his chaplain, and ten other knights and priests, were appointed to enter beneath the high altar of the church, where the sacred lance was said to be concealed.

The people, the soldiery, and the whole mass of the crusaders waited with intense anxiety for the production of what was to be the signal of victory over their enemies, their strong defence, and future passport to Jerusalem. But the workmen dug in vain—their places were relieved by fresh and ardent labourers, and like their predecessors, they gave up the cause. When, however, the night came on, the *croisés* clustered together in small parties; and beneath the raised crosses of the priests, knelt down to vespers, imploring, with earnest vociferation, Christ to come down and redeem his people. Their prayers seemed to have been heard; for, at midnight, Peter

Barthelemy descended into the huge pit which had been excavated, and after searching for some time, suddenly appeared with the sacred lance in his hand, and, as the tradition reports, with a face shining like the sun. A shout was set up by Raymond and his attendants, who rushed forward to embrace the relic. The sound was heard by the crusaders without ; and amid the triumphal sounds of music, and cries of " Hallelujah," the astonished and delighted multitude rushed into the church, and prostrated themselves before the sacred weapon.

In a moment, twenty-six days of misery were forgotten. Hope succeeded to despair, courage to cowardice, and fanaticism uttered the cry of extermination against the surrounding Turks. A summons was sent to them to depart, or to embrace the Christian faith ; and having received their defiance, the soldiers prepared with buoyant alacrity to chastise what they deemed to be the enemies of God. They polished their shields and sharpened their swords, divided their provisions with each other, and their horses (only two hundred) were allowed a double portion of provender. They sung hymns, they prayed, made religious processions, confessed one to another, and in receiving the sacrament of the holy supper, they felt their anger kindled against the impious despisers of the efficacy of the death of Christ. The clergy were seen in every church and among each band of soldiers, promising forgiveness of sins to those who fought bravely ; and now the pallid hue of famine gave place to the flush of anticipated victory, and the people, who had before seemed fainting and spirit-broken, appeared with a bold and martial front.

Religion had changed all. Every one felt that he was the soldier of God, and that, assisted by the lance of his Saviour, he should go forth conquering and to conquer.

The next day was the day of battle; and the religious courage of the army was animated by the circumstance, that it was the festival of the church of Saint Peter and Saint Paul. All the troops, with the exception of those of the Count of Toulouse and a few of his Provencals, who were left to watch the citadel, quitted Antioch, and formed in battle array on the plain before the city. The van was preceded by priests and monks, with crucifixes in their hands, and boxes of sacred relics or holy banners raised high in the air. They were incessantly heard praying, in all the fervour of enthusiasm, for the protection of Heaven, and exclaiming, in the language of the Psalmist, “Be Thou a tower of defence to those who put their trust in Thee.” Every event was turned into a favourable omen; and even the morning dew, scented with the perfume of roses, was supposed to be a special favour of heaven. The sun, too, rose in splendour, and salvation seemed to glow forth from his beams; and tales were told of burning crosses, seen in the early dawn; and of the omen of a white dove hovering for a while over the army, and then flying in the direction of Jerusalem.

As soon as the sun had risen fairly above the horizon, the army set out. It was marshalled in twelve divisions, in honour of the Twelve Apostles. Elevated on a high moveable tower, the papal standard was wheeled forward in the van, guarded by the veteran troops of Hugh, Count of Vermandois. Robert of

Flanders commanded the second division; Robert of Normandy the third. The Bishop of Puy led the fourth; and this division was the most honourable of all the others; for, amid a proud muster of gorgeous banners, sacred relics, and glittering arms, was displayed, high over all—above a splendid pix, containing the sacred host—the head of the miraculous lance. It was borne by the bishop himself, clothed in armour, and mounted on a splendid milk-white war charger; and, as the ecclesiastic moved on, he exhorted the champions of the cross to fight manfully, as brothers of Christ—as sons of God. “Heaven,” he said, “has pardoned your sins; you are the children of salvation. He who dies to-day lives for ever in glory; he but exchanges mortal for eternal life. Be brave of heart, and the Lord will send you legends of saints: for the spirits of the dead of old shall rise for your defence; and holy apostles, saints, and martyrs shall be your support in the hour of strife! Go, then, in the boldness of faith! Go, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Lord God Almighty shall be with you!”

The army shouted their approbation and assent, and with a united movement pressed forward to the plain, on the other side of the Orontes. A body of two thousand Turks guarded the bridge which led to it; but the three first divisions of the *croisés* pressed on with such impetuosity, that the whole of this force was annihilated at a stroke; and the waters beneath were dyed with blood, or their shores choked with the bodies of the dead. Then the whole army formed in two lines on the plain, between the mountains and the river.

And now the immense masses met in one of the most deadly conflicts ever known. The Turks had recourse to various wily stratagems ; but the Christians moved onward in steady column; and the battle became general, and was fought man to man, sword to scymitar, lance to lance. The Saracens, however, unexpectedly brought up a strong reserve of their most formidable cavalry, and took the *croisés* in flank, and an immense force suddenly bore down upon the divisions of Godfrey. The Christians faltered. The Saracenian cavalry was mowing down their ranks, and overwhelming them with that impetuous rush which so frequently gave them the victory. The sacred lance was surrounded, and victory trembled in the balance; but, in this perilous moment, the sun burst forth, and some human figures, clad in white armour, with flaming crosses before them, appeared on the summits of the neighbouring mountains, and the people distinguished the martyrs, Saint George, Saint Maurice, and Saint Theodore. Adhemar, one of the chieftains, ran through the ranks, exclaiming, "Behold the salvation of the Lord! Behold the succour he has promised you!" The warriors answered with the cry, "*Deus id vult!*" Their martial energies revived; the horsemen buried their spurs into the sides of their steeds; the men at arms knit themselves together, shoulder to shoulder—one mighty phalanx. The battalions closed, and the Saracens gave way, broke, and were scattered. They threw away their arms, stumbled over each other in their flight, and were massacred by thousands. The conquerors pressed forward, over the dead bodies of their foes, to the camp. Here the booty was so great, that every one

of the conquerors became in a moment far richer than when he assumed the cross. To the share of Bohemond fell the splendid tent of the Moslem chief Kerboga, which, like the one sent by Harun al Raschid to Charlemagne, could, it is said, contain two thousand men, was divided into streets, like a town, and fortified with towers. Fifteen hundred camels were found in the camp; and the cavalry mounted themselves on Arabian horses; while the spoil of gold, jewels, clothes, silks, and all the paraphernalia of war, and the gorgeousness of its display, was divided equally among the victors.

The loss of the Turks in this battle, as narrated in one of the crusaders' circular letters to the princes and people of Europe, is fixed at sixty-nine thousand; that of the crusaders at ten thousand. After the battle, the whole army celebrated a grand "*Te Deum*" among the dead and the dying; and the hymn of praise mingled with the groans of the wounded. In the city, the churches were restored to their pristine dignity; a day of thanksgiving was set apart, and the gorgeous celebration of religious rites; with the offering of the spoil of the conquered upon the altars, was conducted with a magnificence never surpassed. The Greek patriarch was reinstated in his honours, and the whole body of the crusaders for a while reposed themselves in the arms of religion.

## THE FALL OF JERUSALEM.

“O Jerusalem! how are the mighty come,  
To shake thy battlements.”

CALDERON.



HE great battle of Antioch, although one of the most important events of the crusades, did not immediately produce very important benefits to the invaders, so far as regards the great object they had in view—the redemption of the Holy Sepulchre. The army, although victorious, was exhausted and unable to march to the sacred city at once,

and had to contend in a harassing and petty warfare with all the cities on the road. The investiture, siege, and capture of these cities took place one after the other; and in the end the whole of Syria was conquered by Bohemond; and the principality of Edessa, and a number of strong places and towns surrounding it, were secured for the Christian cause.

But these successes were more than balanced by other calamities. Discord prevailed among the chiefs of the croisés, and the soldiers were in a state of

insubordination, the will of every man being his own law. The heat of the season, the general disorder of the armies, the multitude of human carcasses that encumbered every field of victory, bred a pestilence which spread its ravages with such terrible energy, that in a few months it destroyed more than a hundred thousand persons, among whom was Adhemar, bishop of Puy, whom the people buried where the sacred lance had been discovered.

Siege was now laid to the large and populous town of Marrah, the inhabitants of which, confiding in their numbers, and on the strength of the city, scoffed at the crusading army, and performed every antic they could devise to show their contempt for the cross. The attack was commenced by the Count of Toulouse and Robert of Flanders; but their confidence exceeded their skill, and it was abortive. The scaling ladders were too few, and the enemies hurled upon the assailants enormous stones, and met them with the irresistible Greek fire which the Turks had now obtained the secret of making, and which was the most formidable weapon of destruction known till the invention of gunpowder.

The siege being thus protracted, the crusaders were again exposed to all the horrors of famine, and were reduced to their old resources of dog's flesh and human carcasses. They broke open the tombs of the Musselmans, ripped up the carcasses of the dead for food, and then dressed and eat the fragments of flesh. The siege must have been raised had not Bohemond arrived with new succours, and the desperate savages mounted the walls in various places, and the city was taken.

A bloodless conquest was not the virtue of the croisés, and the work of massacre began. Not able to slay the inhabitants quickly enough one by one, they fell upon the expedient of hanging two or three in one cord. Men and women, the young and the old, were put to death without mercy, and night itself did not stop the effusion of blood; for guards were placed at all the gates to prevent the escape of the unhappy citizens into the fields, and for three days the slaughter continued indiscriminately, and the victims both of savageness and despair were mangled and eaten by their conquerors.\*

The soldiers now marched towards the holy city. Passing through Tripoli, and crossing the plain of Beritus, they went through the country of Sidon, Athareb or Sorfend, Ptolmais or Acre; and when they arrived at Jaffa they left their maritime route, and marched to and halted at Ramula. The Saracens fled from the town; and the crusaders, in their grateful joy at the possession of its riches, vowed that they would raise a bishopric in honour of St. George, whose canonized bones reposed there, and whose spiritual influence had made them successful.

On the third day after their arrival at Ramula, the soldiers and people took the road to JERUSALEM, and soon reached the town, which, in the history of its sacred days, bore the name of Emmaus. The holy city was then in view; every heart flowed with rapture, and every eye was bathed in tears. The word

\* Tudebodus, 806. Robert, 69, 70. Archbishop of Tyre, 733-4. Albertus mentions the fact of ripping up the dead bodies for gold, and of their eating human flesh.

*Jerusalem* was repeated in tumultuous wonder from rank to rank ; all the enthusiasm of their nature was aroused ; zeal and love, joy and piety revived ; all past turmoils were despised ; a moment's happiness outweighed years of pain and sorrow ; and famine, pestilence, and the terrors of the sword were forgotten.

It was a beautiful morning, we are told, in the month of June ; and just as the army had reached the summit of one of the "hills that surroundeth Jerusalem," the day broke in all the majesty of Eastern light, and the sun arose, and they beheld his rays glittering on a rocky steep in the distance, crowned with turrets and towering domes and minarets. One loud shout echoed from hill to hill ; and a joy so ecstatic and intense came at once over the multitude, that they laughed and wept in turns, grew delirious, fainted—and some are declared to have died on the spot from the intensity of their feelings. The soldiers became on the instant mere devout pilgrims ; they pulled off their shoes, the lance and the sword were thrown aside, and tears, like rain, fell upon the ground which the Saviour had wept over.

Of the numbers of people who had vowed to rescue the holy sepulchre from the hands of the infidels, forty thousand only encamped before Jerusalem ; and of these remains of the champions of the cross, twenty-one thousand five hundred only were soldiers, twenty thousand foot, and fifteen hundred cavalry. The destruction of more than eight hundred and fifty thousand Europeans had purchased the possessions of Nice, Antioch, and Edessa. But the heroic courage, and the strong enthusiasm remained

the same ; and although fanaticism had often stripped morality from religion, and misery completed the triumph of vice over virtue, yet devotion to the Saviour of mankind, a love of the cross, and a deep sense of its inestimable benefits, bore them onwards.

Jerusalem, at the time of the crusade, comprised the hills of Golgotha, Bezetha, Aera, and Maria—Mount Zion being at this time without the circuit of the walls. On three sides, the place was defended by deep vallies—the valley of Jehosophat on the east, that of Ennom on the south, and a lateral branch of the same valley on the west. On the north, the approach was open. A narrow valley also divided the old town into two parts.

The garrison of the city consisted of about forty thousand regularly appointed troops, commanded by Istakar, a favourite general of the caliph. It had also a vast number of Moslem peasantry, who had taken refuge in the city, beyond what it usually contained, which with the armed inhabitants could not be less than twenty thousand. There were, besides, numerous Christian tributaries, which, on the approach of the invaders, were dispersed ; the young and vigorous being banished from the city, and the old men, women, and children retained. Istakar had also filled up all the wells in the vicinity of the city ; and as the streams had been dried up by the sun, such was the draught at the Christians' camp, that a drop of liquid was not to be procured for a piece of gold. And although water was discovered among the mountains at a considerable distance from the city, the Musselman forces infested the whole of the surrounding country, and cut off any small bodies that strayed from the Christian camp.

The camp of the crusaders, as at first marked out, extended from the north eastern angle to the most western gate of the city ; Godfrey himself, with his troops, ending the line towards the east, and the Count of St. Giles towards the west. Godfrey, however, soon removed with a part of his troops to the rise of Mount Zion, to avoid the interposition of the deep valley which obstructed his former position ; and to gain a reputation for piety by encamping opposite that part of the mount where it was supposed the Saviour of the world had eaten his last supper with his disciples.

Some dissensions, as usual, had occurred between the chieftains of the crusaders when they first sat down before the sacred city ; but the clergy interposed, and represented how unfit were men at war with each other to fight for the Prince of Peace. The princes and soldiers were addressed by Peter the Hermit, who had again joined the *croisés*. The hearts of his hearers were melted. Tancred offered to be reconciled to his enemy, the Count of Toulouse, and embraced him in the face of the whole army.

The enthusiasm of the troops continued. Various acts of devotion and penance were performed. Some stole away at night ; and amid the dangers of deserts, and in dread of the hovering Saracens, performed short pilgrimages to those celebrated spots hallowed by the Redeemer's presence. A day was appointed, also, for a solemn procession round the walls ; and the whole army went forth, headed by bishops and priests bearing sacred relics and the holy banner, and attended by martial music, and singing psalms and hymns. In the midst another division of priests bore the "sacred elements" of salvation barefoot, and the warriors fol-

lowed, repeating aloud, "God wills it—God wills it!" On Mount Olivet and Mount Zion they prayed for the aid of Heaven in their approaching conflict. The Saracens mocked these expressions of religious feeling by raising and throwing dirt and filth upon the sacred emblems, but these insults had only the effect of producing louder shouts of joy from the Christians.

Various warlike machines of great power and of immense bulk had been constructed opposite those points of the fortification which the leaders intended to attack. But not long before the attack took place, Godfrey, who observed the deepness of the valley, the height of the walls, and the strong defences made by the Saracens, suddenly formed the determination of moving his immense towers and engines, as well as his camp itself, to a spot between the gate of St. Stephen and the valley of Jehosophat, nearly a mile from its former position ; and in the course of a night the whole of his immense machines, tower, and preparations were removed piece by piece, and reconstructed opposite the valley, at a point the Saracens had but slightly defended, and when day dawned on the following morning, the Christians and Saracens were both astonished to find the camp of Godfrey pitched opposite the weakest point of the city. Some time was still occupied in filling up a part of the ditch, so as to enable the machines to be brought close to the walls ; and in this the aid of the Genoese seamen was most efficacious, and all were further stimulated to exertion by the donation of a piece of money to every one who cast three stones into the hollow. But at length all was completed ; and on Thursday, the 14th of July, 1099, the attack commenced. The soldiers

of the crusaders took their places on the huge wooden towers, which had been raised opposite the walls to such a height as to overtop them. The catapult was pushed forward to batter the defences, and the sow was dragged along to sap the foundations ; while the mangonels and balista were brought as near as possible to cast masses of stone and darts with the greatest possible effect.

As soon as the Saracens beheld the Christian army in motion, showers of arrows and javelins were poured forth from the battlements ; and when the towers and the instruments for the sap came nearer, immense pieces of rock, beams of wood, balls of flame, and torrents of Greek fire, were cast down upon the heads of the crusaders. Still, however, they rushed on undaunted and unchecked ; the knights of the highest reputation occupying the upper stories of the towers, while Godfrey himself was seen with a bow, and exposed to all the shafts of the enemy, sending death around him with an unerring hand. The conflict raged throughout the day ; and strong as were the courage and religious zeal of the Christians, yet the triumph lay with the besieged. The great tower of the Count of Toulouse was much injured ; hundreds of men were slain ; and on the approach of darkness, the crusaders drew off—the city was not yet taken.

The night was spent both by the besiegers and the besieged in alarms ; both parties were intent on restoring their injured defences or military engines. The walls of the city had many breaches in them, and the camp was open to attack in many points ; but the spirit of action was not relaxed, and when the morning arose all was industry and bustle.

Every Christian seemed fresh and fierce; the towers were again manned with courageous knights; some mounted the summit and second stories; others were at the bottom impelling the immense masses; and the battering rams were again in motion.

The besieged had repaired their mural breaches, and got ready their fire, their boiling oil, molten lead, and all the dreadful stores of barbaric war. The strife of the preceding day seemed to have added fierceness to their valour, and their defence was conducted in all the madness of despair and of bravery, and of men fighting for their lives. The crusaders were beaten back; some of the towers overthrown; and the soldiers below writhing and quivering in torture, from the missiles of fire, lead, and oil poured upon them, and the high masses of stone thrown from the walls relaxed their efforts—the cause of the crusaders seemed lost, and the most courageous thought that Heaven had deserted his people.

But at the moment when victory seemed to be denied to the soldiers of Christ, despair was beginning to take hold of the soldiers, and a panic had possessed the people of the camp—a knight was seen upon Mount Olivet in radiant armour, wearing his glittering shield, which glowed with the sign of the cross, and pointing with his sword towards the holy city. A cry spread through the army that St. George had come from heaven to their assistance, and all eyes beheld the figure on whom this designation was bestowed. The languishing spirit of enthusiasm was revived, and the crusaders returned to the battle with pristine animation. The weary

and the wounded mingled with the vigorous and active ; the princes, with the columns of the army, led the way, and their example awoke the most timid to gallant and noble daring. Nor were the women to be restrained from mingling in the fight. They were every where to be seen bringing up missiles, and assisting the wounded, or bearing to the soldiers supplies of water, exciting them by their words, and cheering them onwards.

The walls seemed to feel the impetuosity of this new attack on all points at the same moment. The gate of St. Stephen shook under the blows of Tancred, Robert of Normandy, and the Count of Flanders. An immense gabion of straw and cotton, which had been let down to protect the wall from the blows of a battering ram, placed near Godfrey of Bouillon, was set on fire and destroyed. The flames, which for a moment were very violent, drove the defenders from that part of the battlements ; and the moveable tower of the duke was suddenly pushed forward close to the wall ; and one side of the highest stage being as usual constructed so as to let down and form a sort of bridge, was suffered to descend, and rested on the inner wall.

Changing the duties of a general for those of the soldier, the Duke of Lorraine fought with his bow ; near him were Eustace and Baldwin, like two lions beside another lion ; and at the *hour* when the Saviour of the world had been crucified, a soldier, named Letold of Tournay, leaped upon the ramparts. His brother Englebert followed ; and Godfrey was the third Christian who stood as a conqueror on the walls of JERUSALEM. The standard of the cross was

now seen floating on the walls of the holy city, and, with loud shouts, the whole crusading army pressed forward to assail the city at all points with furious energy. In an instant after, the gate of St. Stephen gave way, and Tancred and the two Roberts rushed in, followed by the troops of Normandy, Flanders, and Otranto. By this time, a breach had been made in another part of the wall, and there, too, the German soldiers were entering in crowds, while numbers of the most resolute and gallant soldiers in the army, poured down from the tower to support Godfrey and his companions in possession of the wall. At the same time, the Count of Toulouse entered the city by escalade.

The Musselmans fought with savage fury, and met the besiegers hand to hand at every point; they retreated slowly to their temples and here fought to the very last. The Christian soldiers thought of nothing but revenge against the enemies of Christ; and of acting as God's instruments of retribution on those who had committed sacrilege upon the elements of salvation, and cast filth upon the body and blood of Christ. They drove them through the streets, they followed them into their houses, they slaughtered them in their temples; and such was the carnage in the Mosque of Omar, that the soldiers are said by a writer who was present, to have been red from the "greaves to the helm." Ten thousand people were murdered in this sanctuary. It was not only the lacerated and headless trunks which shocked the sight, but the figures of the victors themselves, reeking with the blood of their slaughtered enemies. No place of refuge remained to the vanquished, all were slain

that could be found, some with the sword, and some were hurled from the tops of the churches, or cast headlong from the walls of the citadel.

The Duke of Lorraine, upon entering the city after the first fury of the assault had passed by, drew his sword, and murdered the helpless Saracens in revenge for the Christian blood spilt by Moslems, and as a punishment for the outrages offered to the pilgrims. But after having, as he supposed, avenged the cause of heaven, Godfrey did not neglect his other religious duties. He threw aside his armour, clothed himself in a linen mantle, and with bare head and naked feet went to the Church of the Sepulchre. His piety, unchristian as it may appear in these enlightened days, was the piety of all the soldiers—they laid down their arms, washed their hands, and put on habits of penitence. In the spirit of humility, with contrite hearts, with tears and groans, they walked over those places which the Saviour had consecrated by his presence; the whole city was inflamed by one spirit, and the clamour of thanksgiving was loudly echoed in the sacred places. At the same time the fury of the sword was assuaged, and the captive population were spared.

Jerusalem was now the scene of wonders. According to the traditions of the times, the ghost of the departed Adhemar came and rejoiced; the bodies of the saints arose; and the spirits of many who had fallen on the road from Europe to Jerusalem appeared, and shared in the felicity of their friends. Thus Jerusalem was in the hands of the Christians, the sepulchre was redeemed, and the blood of the Moslems atoned for its profanation.

On the eighth day after the capture of Jerusalem, the chieftains and princes of the crusaders assembled for the election of a king, and by the common decree of all, Godfrey of Bouillon was elected to this high honour ; and Fulcher of Chartres, who was present, observed, that he showed himself so superior and excellent in royal majesty, that if it had been possible to bring all the kings of the earth around him, he would have been judged by all the first in all chivalrous qualities, in beauty of face and body, and in noble regularity of life.

The princes conducted him in religious and stately order to the church which covered the tomb of Christ ; but he refused to wear a diadem in a city where his Saviour had worn a crown of thorns, and said he was contented with the title of Defender of the Holy Sepulchre.

The reign of Godfrey continued not quite a year. He was seized with illness after several harassing skirmishes with the Turks, over whom he always proved victor. He seems to have died full of religious faith and peace. His tomb was not only watered by the tears of his friends, but by the lamentations of many of the Musselmans, whose affections his virtues had conciliated. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre received his ashes ; and it was decreed that that place should be the repository of the kings, his successors.

## LOSS OF THE CROSS.

“Weep, Christians, weep!  
 Trail your red banners on the parched ground,  
 And let your falchions bite the dust. Go now,  
 And put on sackcloth—sit on ashes, howl !  
 Like dogs that bay the moon.”

AL KARISH.



THE wars between Saladin and the Christians in the reign of Baldwin the Fourth, are not worthy of detail, as they led to no decisive issues. One circumstance, however, I must mention; that after the elevation of Guy of Lusignan to the throne of Jerusalem, a few hundred of the military orders attacked some thousand Musselmans. Only two or three of the valiant band survived the battle. The bravery of the troop was so heroic, as to receive the admiration of the enemy. Some of the knights, after having lost their swords, threw themselves on the foe and fought with their fists; others drew the Saracens' arrows from their bodies, and hurled them at the foe. One of the templars, named James De Maille, mounted

on a white horse, fought so nobly, that the Saracens called him St. George ; and after the battle they hung over him with respect, and even drank his blood, thinking thereby that they should acquire courage.

Guy of Lusignan was now King of Jerusalem, and Saladin was Lord of Syria and Egypt, having risen to the supreme power by a strange mixture of heroism and cunning. In July, 1187, he lay encamped near the Lake of Tiberias, and the Christians, under Guy of Lusignan, Raymond of Tripoli, and others, hastened to encounter him ; and on the plain, near that celebrated city, the two armies met in conflict. For a whole day the engagement was in suspense, and at night the Latins retired to some rocks, rising among which were some secret springs. The heat of a Syrian summer's night was rendered doubly horrid, because the Saracens set fire to some woods which surrounded the Christian camp. In the morning the two armies were for a while stationary. But with the rising sun the Latins uttered their shout of war ; the Turks answered by the clangour of their trumpets and atabals, and the fight began. The bishops and clergy were, according to custom, the nourishers of martial virtue. They ran through the ranks, cheering the soldiers of the church militant. The piece of the true cross, the great object of the crusades, was placed under a golden canopy and beside the sacred banner, and elevated upon a hill, where it might be seen by the whole army. Round it the broken squadrons of the crusaders continually rallied ; but the crescent had more numerous supporters than the cross, and the innumerable hordes of the Asiatics came down again and again upon the

Christians to overwhelm them. Thousands fell, and the Christians were discomfited and took to flight. The massacre was fearful. The Bishop of Lydda was taken in battle, with the king, Guy of Lusignan ; also his brother, Geoffrey Boniface, Marquis of Montserrat, the Grand Master of the Templars, with a vast number of his knights, besides other persons of note.

Thus ended the battle of Tiberias, the most fatal event that had befallen the kingdom of Jerusalem, since its first foundation by Godfrey of Bouillon and his companions. It appears from the best accounts, that not above a thousand men in all made their escape from that fatal field. "In beholding the number of the dead," says Ibn Alatir, a Saracen writer, who was present, "one did not believe there were any prisoners, and on looking at the prisoners, one scarcely believed there were any dead. I, myself," he continues, "passed over the field of battle a year after, and saw the bones piled up in heaps, and others lying about in all directions, without counting those which the wild beasts and torrents had carried away to the mountains and vallies." Emadeddin, another observer says—"I saw the most terrible spectacle—who can describe it ? I saw heads struck off, eyes put out or burst, corpses covered with dust, limbs dislocated, arms detached, bones cloven, necks cut through, backs broken, feet no longer attached to the leg, bodies parted in two, lips torn, foreheads riven. In beholding these countenances smitten to the earth and covered with blood and wounds, I remembered the words of the Koran—'O, that I were dust !'"

In the eyes of the Christians the greatest misfortune in this day of disaster was, the loss of the holy

cross. It had been carried to the fight by the hands of the Bishops of Acre and Lidda ; but the bishop fell early in the day, and the cross itself was captured in one of the charges of the Saracens, some time before the surrender of the king. From that moment the crusaders considered all was lost. The warriors of the Holy Land might be slain, and fresh knights and nobles flow into Palestine from the West—the king himself might be taken, and another wiser and better easily be found—but the true cross was not to be replaced. The wood on which the Saviour was supposed to have suffered—the sign of their salvation—their gage of victory—the emblem of their highest and holiest hopes was gone for ever, and the hearts of the crusaders sunk within them.

When the battle was over, and the victory secure, Saladin caused the principal prisoners to be brought to his tent, and seeing the intense thirst with which they were afflicted, he called for some iced water, and offered it to Guy, King of Jerusalem. That cup was doubly welcome, for besides allaying his thirst, it gave him the assurance of safety, the Musselmans never killing a foreigner to whom they had offered any act of hospitality. When the king had drank, he handed the cup to Renault of Chatillon ; but Saladin instantly exclaimed, in remembrance of some former treachery of this warrior, “It is not I who gave that wretch drink,” and then turned towards the unhappy noble with a frowning and terrible brow ; he reproached him with his treacherous breach of the truce, in regard to the Musselman caravan, and offered him his life only upon the renunciation of his

religion. "It is better to die," replied the prisoner ; when Saladin, advancing, struck him with his scymitar. This was the signal for the emirs to despatch him, and the body fell at the feet of the King of Jerusalem, who was seized with trembling at the sight. The sultan, however, bade him fear nothing, and thus ended the slaughter for that day.

The next evening was that of Sunday, and at the hour of sunset, in cool blood, and with bitter determination, Saladin commanded the last act of the tragedy of Tiberias to take place. The Musselman army was drawn up in battle array, the emirs of the sultan arranged in line on his right and left ; and Saladin, seated in the midst, by the cool shores of the lake, ordered the Knights Templars and the Hospitallers, the sworn and devoted enemies of Islamism to be brought before him, with the exception of the Grand Master of the former order.

No longer moved by the fierce passions which animated him at the moment of the death of Renault of Chatillon, but deliberately perpetrating an act of blood-thirsty cruelty, under the impulse of religious fanaticism, Saladin, with a smiling face, ordered the emirs and principal persons around to strike off the heads of the prisoners, one by one ; while the rest of the army looked upon the sanguinary deed with no feelings of horror or compassion, but with critical admiration of the dexterity displayed by the executioners.

The Christian world, however, heard of the devotion unto death, which the martyrs of the Temple and Hospital had shewn, with tender reverence and sor-

rowful admiration; and the religious imagination of the age clothed their mortal remains with glory, and represented rays of celestial light as issuing from the corpses of those celebrated warriors, for three nights, as they remained unburied by the dark waters of Gennesareth.

Not satisfied with this cruel massacre, Saladin commanded the governor of Damascus to put to death all the knights of the Temple and Hospital who were already prisoners in that town, an order which was executed with blood-thirsty fidelity; and his subjects in this city, equally sanguinary, slew all the Christians wherever they found them, and, according to the testimony of one of their own writers, Abon-Schameh, the freshly-dissevered heads of Christian captives were piled up by the devout Musselmans like melons, having been cut off, in cold blood, as an offering to their god of vengeance.

Obtaining new levies of troops, Saladin marched through the country, carrying fire and sword on every side to those who would not accept his terms; and every part of the land, between the country of Tripoli and the city of Jerusalem, and Samaria, Caesarea, Seferia, Caifa, and Neplouse, were captured; while, on the other side, the Egyptian forces made themselves masters of Jaffa, Zabna, and other places. Saladin then advanced along the sea shore, and laid siege to Ascalon, preparatory to an attack upon Jerusalem. After fourteen days' investure, Ascalon submitted to the terms of the conqueror.

During these events the state of the Christians of Palestine was more dreadful than can be conceived; and the account of the abbot of Coggeshal causes the

reader, even of the present day, to sympathise with the unfortunate inhabitants of the Holy Land, and to shudder at their fate. The ruthless and destroying hand of the Musselman was carried into every village and hamlet. The men were slain wherever they were found, and the women and children carried into captivity. The whole land was covered with putrifying corpses; the churches, the convents, the chapels, were burnt to the ground. Flames and smoke, cries of agony, and moans of regret, rose up at once from the fair fields of Palestine, and the hearts of even the Musselman writers themselves seemed to have been struck with the sad spectacle they witnessed.

Marching from Ascalon with the whole force of his mighty army, preceded by clouds of light horsemen, and displaying all the pomp of Eastern war, the sultan commenced his advance to Jerusalem on Monday, the twenty-first of September, 1187. The first day he arrived at Beersheba, the second he paused at Bethlehem; and on the third his vast host looked forward upon Jerusalem, from the hills by which it is surrounded. Joy and satisfaction took possession of the Musselmen, and shouts of gratulation rent the sky, as they beheld the city not less holy in their eyes than in the eyes of the Christians. At the same time, from the walls of Jerusalem the Christians saw the innumerable standards of the Musselman host—yellow, white, and brown; their floating garments, their glittering arms, and their light Arabian chargers, amid clouds of dust, which, to use the expression of an Arabian writer who was present (Al Siuti), “turned the light of the morning into the twilight of night.” But the resolution of the Christians did not give way before the sight.

The cry in the city, according to the account of Al Siuti, was "Beneath the sepulchre of our Lord we will die ! and, on account of the dread of its separation from us, we will be strong! From it we will procrastinate the evil day; and towards the relics of the city and the sepulchre will we hasten! Wherefore shall we not fight? Wherefore not do battle in this quarrel?"

But human weakness had its time of tremor. The women and children flocked into the churches, and cast themselves before the altars, stretching out their arms to God for help, in that terrible hour of danger and dismay. Penitence and remorse might also have a share in that devotion; for there can be no doubt but the greatest wickedness had reigned in Jerusalem for many years.

The male population, however, flocked to the battlements—citizens, knights, men at arms, and even priests, made every effort to offer a vigorous resistance to the enemy. Machines for casting down stones and Greek fire, sheaves of arrows, heaps of quarrels, swords, spears, and bucklers were prepared, and the sound of voices giving orders, was confused by the thunder and lightning of their swords and arms.

Five days were spent by Saladin in reconnoitring the city and preparing for the attack ; but repeated sorties were made by the besieged, in one of which a principal Moslem leader was slain. The sultan first menaced the northern part of the city; but at that spot he could make no impression, the troops having the sun in their eyes during the whole of the first part of the day. After spending some time in

fruitless and bloody combats, Saladin determined to change his point of attack, and occupied the high grounds in the neighbourhood of the gate of Saint Stephen and that of Jehosophat, extending his position to the Mount of Olives, whence his military engines could cast missiles into all the neighbouring streets, except such as were arched over.

The sufferings of the people of Jerusalem now became terrible. Hemmed in on every side, with no position which would give them exit to attack the enemy in the field, all that they could hope was to defend the walls to the best of their power. But the very next day after this change of plan had taken place, twelve great machines were playing against the city, and early in the morning the army of the Turks advanced to the assault in three columns, bearing paveses before them, with the miners and men-at-arms in front ; while the archers followed, covering the attack by flights of arrows, so thick that not a man dared to remain on the walls. The Abbot of Coggeshal was here struck by an arrow in the face, and though the wood was withdrawn, the iron point of the weapon was buried in his face for life.

In two days fifteen toises of the wall were mined, and it became clear that a practicable breach would soon be made, so that there being no hope of succour from without, the place could not be considered as tenable. A hasty and anxious consultation of the chief persons of the city was then held, when all the knights, the men-at-arms, and even the citizens, agreed that it would be better to issue forth during the night, and attack the camp of Saladin sword in

hand, than either to surrender the city, or to await the attack of the infidel within the walls.

The patriarch Heraclius, however, represented to the inhabitants that, though they might die gloriously in such a daring enterprise, their wives and children would fall victims to Mahomedan cruelty; and that, while they gave up life for the cross of Christ, those they loved best would become slaves of the infidel and the followers of Mahomed. At the same time he told them that there was treachery in the city among the Greek Christians, who had entered into a treaty with Saladin to deliver it into his hands, and even to aid in their massacre.

Nothing was then left but to capitulate, and no time was to be lost. A deputation was immediately sent to Saladin, asking what terms he would grant; but the sultan fiercely replied, "I will act towards the Christians as the Christians did towards the Mussel-mans, when they took the Holy City. I will put the men to the sword, and of the rest I will make slaves. I will give them evil for evil."

This answer struck terror into the emissaries; but after Balian of Ibelin had endeavoured to move Saladin with prayers and entreaties without avail, the gallant knight assumed another tone, and addressed the Mahomedan conqueror in a speech every way remarkable, which has been preserved by the Arabian historians.

"Know, oh sultan!" he said, "that within these walls the number is so infinite, that God alone can calculate it. The inhabitants wish not to raise a useless war, and they would not resist you, because you have exercised clemency to those who have sub-

mitted. They fear death and cling to life ; but if death is inevitable, I swear, by God who hears us, that we will kill our wives and our children, and burn up our wealth, not leaving you a bezant. You will find no women to bring into slavery, no men to cast into irons ; we will destroy the holy places ; we will slaughter the five thousand Musselmans we have in our hands ; and we will not leave a beast of burden or a living thing in the place besides ourselves. We will then go forth against you ; we will fight as those who fight for life alone ; and for one of us who perish, many of yours shall fall. We will die free, or we will triumph gloriously."

Saladin was struck with surprise, and after a short consultation with his emirs, he consented to treat for the capitulation of the city. The terms were soon arranged. For all the ordinary classes of citizens, whether rich or poor, a ransom was agreed upon, at the rate of ten pieces of gold for each man, five for each woman, and two for each child. Every one who could discharge the fixed sum for his ransom, was to go whithersoever he would. But forty days were left for the remainder to procure the money, and those who could not do so at the expiration of that term, were to become prisoners. Eighteen thousand souls, however, were exempted from these conditions as the reputed poor of the city, and for the redemption of these, Balian of Ibelin generously offered to pay himself thirty thousand pieces of gold.

These conditions being arranged, and the treaty signed, the gates of Jerusalem were thrown open to the sultan, and the crescent planted on the walls on the 2nd of October, 1187. Joy spread through the

whole of Islamism at the news. The sultan afterwards turned his arms against the few places which held out in the kingdom of Jerusalem, and to the conquest of the other Christian principalities in Syria ; but the fall of Jerusalem is the event which gave rise to another effort of Christian Europe, at the accession of Richard I. to the throne of England.

## EXPLOITS OF RICHARD CŒUR-DE-LION.

"The knight of merrie England,  
 King Richard now is come,  
 To fight with axe and broad sword,  
 And send his arrows home.  
 Arouse ye then my warriors bold,  
 And fight as ye have fought of old."



WHEN the news arrived in the West of the capture of the cross and the fall of Jerusalem into the hands of the infidels, the event was felt as a calamity from one end of Europe to another, and the judgments of God, as they were termed, brought grief and consternation to the heart of every man. Nothing could exceed which seized the court of Rome. In the moments of weakness and humiliation, the proud and luxurious cardinals acknowledged the dignity and the force of virtue. They resolved to take no bribes in the administration of justice; to abstain from all luxury of living and splendour of dress; to go to Jerusalem with the staff and the scrip of simple pilgrims; and never to ride on horseback while the ground of

their Saviour was trodden under the feet of Pagans. Pope Urban III. died about this period, and his death, like every direful event of the time, was attributed to grief at the intelligence of the Saracenian victories. William, Archbishop of Tyre, our great guide in history, was one of the messengers of the news; and his friend, Gregory VIII., successor of Urban, immediately issued a bull for a new crusade, with the usual privileges to the *croisés*.

The Emperor Frederic Barbarossa, of Germany, summoned a council at Mayence, for the purpose of considering a new crusade. Prelates and Barons were unanimous in their wish for it. The emperor and his son, the Duke of Swabia, the Dukes of Austria and Moravia, and sixty-eight temporal and spiritual lords, were fired with the same enthusiasm. Philip I., King of France, and Henry II., King of England, met together in Normandy; and the prelate of the Eastern Latin Church appeared, and pleaded the cause of religion before the two monarchs in such a pathetic and touching manner, that Philip and Henry wept, embraced, and vowed to go together to the Holy Land, and received the cross from the hands of the Archbishop.

The Count of Flanders having entered into the crusade, it was agreed, that the French *croisés* should wear red crosses, the English white ones, and the Flemish green. One opinion and one feeling influenced every heart, and by universal consent, a general tax was imposed, called the Saladin tythe. It was levied upon the rents and goods of the English people, both clergy and laity, Jews as well as Christians. The English council forbade all manner

of gaming; all kinds of luxury and sensual pleasures; and the clergy seemed determined that this crusade should be signalized by the piety of the crusaders.

Though ships continually sailed from England and France bearing martial pilgrims to the Holy Land, the ambition and restlessness of Philip Augustus and Prince Richard diverted the government and the great body of the people from the salvation of Palestine. The ignominious peace which Henry was obliged to make with France, and his mental agony at the ingratitude and rebellion of his sons, brought on the death of the English monarch, who expired on the 6th of July, 1189, in the fifty-seventh year of his age.

The love of military glory inflamed the French King, and the bold, ardent, and valiant Richard Coeur-de-Lion united both a love of glory and a desire of vengeance on the enemies of Christ. Both were inspired with the passion of fame, and the whole people of Europe were in a fever of revenge. So eager was Richard to equip a military force, that he sold the crown lands, and the King of Scotland obtained, for ten thousand marks, the renunciation of the claims of England on the allegiance of Scotland. The royal treasury at Winchester contained nine hundred thousand pounds sterling, besides many vases and other ornaments in gold and silver, with precious stones of considerable value; and this, besides large sums obtained from other sources, were spent in preparation for the new crusade.

Richard set sail from Dover on the 11th of December, 1190, with thirty thousand infantry and five thousand cavalry, and landed in Flanders, where he

was entertained with great magnificence. From thence he proceeded to Rouen, where he convoked the states of his duchy, that all his chief vassals might do him homage, and swear fidelity to him during his absence. During his stay in Normandy, Richard made some singular laws for regulating the conduct of the pilgrims in their passage by sea. Murder was to be punished by casting into the water the deceased person, with the murderer tied to him. He that drew his sword in anger should lose his head. If a man gave another a blow he was to be thrice immersed. An ounce of silver was the penalty for using opprobrious language. A thief was to have boiling pitch and feathers put on his head, and was to be set on shore at the first opportunity.

The armies of France and England joined each other on the plains of Vezelay, whence they marched to Lyons. They then separated, Philip taking the road to Genoa, and Richard that to Marseilles. The fleet of the latter had not arrived at this place at the appointed time, and so great was his impatience, that after waiting for it only eight days, he hired some gallies and put to sea. He went to Genoa, and conferred with the French king; thence to Pisa. On the 20th of August he reached Naples; and from thence he travelled on horseback to Salernum, which he left on the 13th of September, and on the 21st reached Mileto. He then pursued his journey, accompanied by only one knight. The impetuosity of his progress was checked by his love of pleasure; and he entered a cottage because he heard that a hawk was confined in it. He seized the bird, and on his refusal to deliver it up, the peasants assailed

him with clubs and stones, and one man even drew his dagger. Richard struck the caitiff with the flat part of his sword ; the weapon broke ; and, till he could reach a neighbouring priory, he was obliged to defend himself by stones.

The fleet of Richard encountered a violent storm shortly after its departure from Sicily. A part of it cast anchor at Candia, whence it proceeded to Rhodes ; the remainder was driven on the coast of Cyprus, and in this division were the two queens, the mother and wife of Richard. Isaac Comnenus, who ruled in the city, would not allow the shipwrecked voyagers to come to Lemisso, the capital. He even had the inhumanity to imprison the sailors. As soon as Richard received intelligence of this inhospitable usage, he steered for Cyprus, and quickly made himself master of Lemisso. He seized Comnenus, who prayed for his life, and begged not to be loaded with chains. " You shall live," said Richard, " although you deserve to die ; and as you are alarmed at iron chains, you shall carry chains of silver." The king completely conquered Cyprus, and reposed himself from the toils of war by celebrating his marriage with Berengaria, and participating in the festivities of Lemisso. But in a few weeks he roused himself to arms. His fleet left Cyprus. A large troop ship of Saladin crossed his way ; the light gallies surrounded and attacked her, but the lofty sides of the Turk could not be mounted. " I will crucify all my soldiers if she should escape," exclaimed Richard. His men, more in dread of their sovereign's wrath than the swords of the foe, impelled the sharp beaks of their vessels against the

enemy. Some of the sailors dived into the sea and seized the rudder, and the soldiers came in close combat with the Saracens. In order to make the capture an unprofitable one, the Emir commanded his troops to cut through the sides of the ship till the waters should rush in. They then leaped on the decks of the English gallies, but the English fell upon them with their well-known bravery, and drove them into the sea.

Shouts of warm and gratulatory acclamations saluted the English on their arrival at Acre. The brilliant scene before them was calculated to excite all the animating feelings of warriors. The martial youth of Europe were assembled on the plain in all the pride and pomp of chivalry. The splendid tents, the gorgeous ensigns, the glittering weapons, the armorial cognizances, displayed their national peculiarities. On the eminences in the distance the thick embattled squadrons of the sultan were encamped. The Mameluke Tartar was armed with his bow, the people of Higher Egypt with their flails and scourges, and the Bedouins with their spears and round shields. The brazen drum sounded the note of war, and the black banner of Saladin was raised in proud defiance of the crimson standard of the cross.

The attack on Acre was commenced by the French troops, but high as were their valour, they were repulsed at every point. Richard, however, sick as he was, inspired the English soldiers with a courage that could not be resisted. He commanded himself to be carried on a litter to the works opposite the walls, and was so active in making and using his petrarchæ, that he soon destroyed half of

one of the Turkish towers. He preserved the machines from the Greek fire of the city, and he rewarded his balistariæ for every stone which they removed from the walls. The ditch was filled up, the tower was completely levelled, and the English heroes, particularly the Earl of Leicester and the Bishop of Salisbury, prepared to enter the breach, but the fury of the Turks was irresistible, and the walls were cleared of the assailants.

The English and French having both been repulsed when acting singly, now threw aside their jealousies ; they united, and continued their assaults day and night ; and at last, harassed and worn out by hard fighting, the Turks agreed to surrender, and to deliver unto the two kings the city itself, and four hundred Christian prisoners who were in it. The true cross was to be resigned, with one thousand other captives and two hundred knights, selected by the allies from those who were in the hands of Saladin. The Christians entered Acre ; the banners of the two kings floated on the ramparts. But precedence seems to have been given to Richard, for he and his wife and sister inhabited the royal palace, while Philip occupied the house of the Templars.

An untoward event occurred after the assault. Leopold of Austria, who commanded the Germans, placed his standard on one of the towers of the captured city. Richard and Philip, deeming this an insult, as the Germans had taken little part in the affair, ordered it to be removed ; which not being immediately complied with, Richard, with his usual impetuosity, rushed to the tower, and with his own

hands pulled down the standard, trampled it under foot, and threw it over the walls. This outrage was sternly revenged on the King of England after his return from Palestine.

Soon after the capture of Acre, Philip of France returned to Europe upon the plea of ill health, but evidently from chagrin at the great fame which Richard of England had acquired. Richard then repaired the shattered walls and houses of Acre, and the Bishop of Salisbury and the rest of the clergy re-edified and re-consecrated the altars. The piece of holy wood under which the Syrian Christians had so often fought, was still in the hands of the Saracens ; and as the ransom had not been paid, either from bad faith or inability, the lion-hearted monarch prepared for hostilities, and at the head of one hundred thousand English, German, and some French soldiers, left Acre under the glorious ensign of the cross, and marched in a southern direction, generally within sight of their ships, which coasted along the shores, bearing forage, provisions, and other military necessaries.

As they advanced in martial pomp, clouds of Turks overhung their journey. The red cross knights in the van and the military friars in the rear, frequently broke the violence of the storm ; but their safety was owing to the compact firmness of their columns and their resolute forbearance. The army always halted at night-fall. Heralds cried aloud, "Save the Holy Sepulchre !" and the soldiers, thus reminded of their duties and their object, immediately, with raised hands and tearful eyes, implored the pity and the aid of Heaven

Near Azotus a general engagement could no longer be avoided. The Turks, to the amount of two hundred thousand men, now commanded by Saladin, pressed on every side. The advanced guard of the Christians was under the orders of James d'Avênes, Lord of Guise, one of the bravest captains of the age. The French formed the rear under the Duke of Burgundy, a man of doubtful valour. The centre was commanded by Richard himself, and he was the stay and bulwark of the whole. The battle was commenced by James d'Avênes, who turned and charged through the hostile squadrons. At the third charge he was thrown to the ground, and one of his legs was severed from his body. Still he fought bravely till his right hand was cut off ; when, recognising Richard he exclaimed, "Valiant knight, avenge my death !" and expired. Coeur-de-Lion furiously attacked the enemy, and the plain was strewn with the dying and the dead.

Saladin, with the flower of his army, had not yet mixed in the fray. When he saw the discomfiture of his troops he made a circuitous movement, and fell on the division of the Duke of Burgundy, who, being taken by surprise and with very inferior forces, was thrown into confusion ; but he was soon relieved by the king, when the battle became general. Saladin and Richard performed prodigies of valour, and victory was long doubtful. They at length met in single combat, when Richard struck the sultan so weighty a blow on the head, that he fell backwards from his horse, and would have been taken prisoner, had not an overwhelming body of Saracens charged to his rescue. Saladin quickly recovered from the

injury he had received ; but seeing that the fortune of the day was against him, he ordered a retreat, leaving forty thousand slain on the field of battle.

The progress of Cœur-de-Lion was no longer molested, and he quickly arrived at Jaffa ; but here he nearly lost his liberty, if not his life. The king was particularly fond of falconry, and being one day much fatigued, he fell asleep under a tree. He was roused by the trampling of horses, and soon surrounded by a Saracen detachment. Richard, with six attendants who had attended him in his sport, rushed on their assailants sword in hand. Five of his companions were slain, and he must have inevitably perished had it not been for the generous devotion of one of them, named William de Pratelles, who, by his name, ought to have been relative to the ancestors of Peter Parley, but who by his deeds was not quite so careful of telling the truth ; for he cried out "I am the king !" and by this piece of deceit his sovereign escaped. At this announcement the Saracens seized him, and took him to Saladin, before whom he avowed the stratagem he had practised ; and Saladin, who well knew how to appreciate such devotion, treated him with all the respect and distinction due to his valour and his fidelity. Richard ransomed his friend by the exchange of ten Emirs whom he had captured at the battle of Ascalon.

Shortly after this circumstance a body of Templars fell into an ambuscade of the Turks. Richard sent the Earl of Leicester to the aid of the brave but exhausted knights, and promised to follow. Before he could buckle on his armour he heard that the

enemy had triumphed. Despising all personal solicitude he flew to the place of combat, plunged into the ranks of the enemy, and his impetuosity received the usual reward of success—the Turks fled, and the English prisoners were re-captured.

The crusaders, animated by the booty of Ascalon, now desired to attack Jerusalem ; but the season of the year was unfavourable, and the force Richard had under his command unequal to the exploit. Hence arose dissensions among the combined army. The Duke of Austria who had not forgotten the indignity put on his banner after the siege of Acre, made the postponement of the siege of the holy city a pretext for his return to Europe ; and the Duke of Burgundy, who had now secret instructions from Philip, prepared to follow the example of Leopold.

Notwithstanding the impolicy of the movement, the army moved towards Jerusalem, and encamped in the valley of Hebron. The generals and soldiers vowed that they would not quit Palestine without having redeemed the sepulchre. And when the resolution was taken to march upon the sacred city, hymns and thanksgivings testified the joy of the crusaders. They reached Bethlehem, the scene of our Saviour's nativity ; but now they began to feel the inferiority of their forces, and when they were within two miles of the city they learned that the Turks had destroyed all the cisterns, and dammed up all the streams, so that to besiege the city was impossible. A knight led the heroic and ardent Richard to the top of a hill that he might take a farewell look of the city, but covering his face with his shield, he declared that he was not worthy to behold a city

that he could not conquer—and this was the signal for the French troops to retire towards Jaffa.

Hearing of the declining fortunes of the invaders, Saladin mustered his scattered forces, and by rapid marches reached Jaffa; and so vigorous was the siege of it, that in a few days one of the gates was broken down, and such of the soldiers as could not escape or defend themselves in the great tower, or citadel, were destroyed. The French and German, with some English knights, had agreed to capitulate on the following day; but before the morning the brave Plantaganet had reached Jaffa by sea. The English monarch was the first who leaped on shore, sword in hand, and hewed his way to the gates; and so furious was his attack, that the astonished Turks deserted the town, and when the army at a little distance saw the standard of Richard placed upon the walls, they fled to the mountains in dismay.

Their terror was, however, changed into shame and rage, when it was found that the Turkish hosts had been panic-struck by a troop of five hundred men; and Saladin on the next night attempted to regain his advantages. But the anxiously vigilant Richard, started from his tent armed at all points, and called his faithful friends to his side. His archers and cross-bowmen formed an impenetrable phalanx, his men-at-arms, who were on horseback, and these were only ten, fought singly like true heroes of chivalry; and when the Turks felt again the edge of the two-handed sword and swinging battle axe, which had turned the day at Azotus, their panic was renewed, and they fled on all sides. Indeed, so splendid and worthy of admiration were

the achievements of Milech Ric, that even the brother of Saladin, at one time, seeing him dismounted, sent him two horses in token of respect.

Richard's victory placed him in a commanding attitude. Instead of wishing for new battles he solicited peace ; and Saladin, at length exhausted by wars, submitted to necessity. The Christian king and the sultan of Egypt interchanged expressions of esteem ; and as the former avowed his contempt of the vulgar obligation of oaths, they only grasped each other's hands in pledge of fidelity. A truce was agreed upon for three years and eight months ; the fort of Ascalon was to be destroyed ; but Jaffa and Tyre, with the country between them, were to be surrendered to the Christians. The people of the West were also at liberty to make their pilgrimages to Jerusalem, exempt from the taxes which the Moslem princes had at former times imposed.

The glory obtained by Richard in this crusade far exceeded that of any of his companions-in-arms. The Saracen mother quieted the unruly child by telling him that King Richard was coming ; and if a horse started on the road, the rider would say, "Do you think King Richard is concealed behind the bush?"

In the month of October, Richard, with his queen, the English soldiers, and pilgrims, set sail for England. After passing Sicily, he was captured by a pirate ; but the valour of his resistance and the respect paid to his name induced his conqueror to restore him and his companions to liberty, and they were safely landed in Sclavonia. His companions were Baldwin de Betun, a priest; Anselm, the chaplain, and a few Knights Templars.

Now, it so happened that Richard, upon landing, had to pass through the territories of the governor of Zara, who was a relation of Conrad of Monferrat, and it was necessary that he should obtain his permission to pass freely through the country. Richard had been unjustly charged with the murder of Conrad, and found of course an enemy in his relation. Without revealing his rank, Richard sent the governor a ring, ornamented with a beautiful ruby, with a request to be allowed free passage through his territory ; but the jewel was known to the governor, from his having formerly sold it to some merchants at Pisa, who had bought it of him expressly for Richard. "Who demands a free passage?" said he to the messenger. "Pilgrims returning from Jerusalem." "What is the name of their master." "One is called Baldwin, of Betune, the other, Hugh the merchant, who offers you this ring." The governor examined the ring for some time with great attention, without uttering a word ; at last he broke his silence, saying, " You do not speak the truth—this ring does not belong to Hugh the merchant, but to King Richard ; but since he has been so generous as to offer me a gift though he has no knowledge of me, I will not arrest him. I return the ring, and allow him to depart in peace."

Richard astonished at this discovery, hastened his departure ; but though the governor of Zara had allowed him to escape from his own jurisdiction, he wrote to his brother, who commanded the adjoining town, advising him that the King of England was in the neighbourhood. The brother had a Norman servant, whom he desired daily to visit houses in which pilgrims were lodged ; he was ordered to spare no

pains in discovering Richard. After an active search the monarch was detected ; but the Norman, instead of betraying him, furnished him with a fleet horse, and advised him to fly. On returning to his master, he said that the information received from Zara was incorrect—that Richard was not in the country, but one of his subjects who resembled him, and who had recently quitted the Holy Land.

The king reached the German territory, accompanied by William de l' Etang and a single servant, who spoke the language. Unfortunately he rested at Vienna, then governed by Leopold, Duke of Austria, whose banner Richard had torn down from the walls of Acre, and trampled under foot. The servant, when he went to market, ostentatiously paraded his fine clothes, which he had procured by means of his master's liberality, and indulged in imprudent conversation about his wealth. This created suspicion, and the lad was seized, and ordered by the emissaries of Leopold to lead them to the residence of his master. This he refused to do, on which he was put to the torture, and confessed all. The inn in which Richard lodged was immediately surrounded by soldiers, who seized and confined him in prison, chosen men of approved fidelity guarding him night and day with drawn swords.

The King of France rejoiced at the calamity of his rival, and implored the emperor never to set him free. Prince John, his brother, made another attempt upon the English throne, but the barons were indignant at his perfidiousness, and sympathised with their imprisoned king. The Pope threatened the Emperor and the French king with excommunication, unless the

one gave freedom to Richard, and the other ceased from his barbarous wars on his territories. The ecclesiastical and secular princes of Germany assembled in diet at Worms, in the month of July, and Richard, attended by the Bishops of Bath and Ely, was brought before them. He was arraigned by the emperor for the crimes of supporting a usurper in Sicily, of quarreling with the King of France, of insulting the Duke of Austria, and of murdering the Prince of Tyre, who was a relation of the emperor. To all these charges Richard replied in so clear and argumentative a manner, that the members of the diet were filled with admiration of him, and no suspicion of guilt remained in their minds.\*

Richard, however, was still treated as a prisoner of war by the emperor, and a treaty was concluded between them, by which he was to obtain his liberty by the payment of one hundred marks of silver, and the delivery of hostages for thirty thousand marks to the emperor, and twenty thousand to the Duke of Austria. This sum was with great difficulty collected in England, notwithstanding the love of the English for their king. Richard was released on the 4th of February, 1194. Having to pass through France, he passed through Germany, and reached Antwerp in safety, where the Archbishop of Cologne and other noblemen paid him the highest honours. Immediately embarking on board a small vessel, he reached England and landed at Sandwich.

Such is a brief account of what is usually called the

\* Connected with the captivity of Richard is a romantic story of his having been discovered by a minstrel named Blondel, which is entirely fictitious.

*third crusade.* The *fourth crusade* was conducted by the King of Hungary, Andrew II., by sea. The Emperor Frederick II., compelled by the Pope, who wished his destruction to fulfil a promise made in early youth, undertook a fifth crusade, and succeeded in regaining Jerusalem for a time, but without obtaining any permanent possession of the country.

The list of heroes who conducted the crusades is honourably closed with St. Louis, King of France, who conducted the sixth crusade. He showed great bravery, and his plans were ably conceived. While Louis was still in Egypt, for he proposed conquering the Holy Land by the invasion of Egypt, the seat at that time of the rulers in Palestine, a revolution broke out in that country, which proved decisive with regard to the Holy Land. The house of Saladin was dethroned, and the dominions of the Mamelukes and sultans established. These directed their efforts against the possessions of the Christians in Palestine. Tripoli, Tyre, Beritus, fell into their hands, successively, and on the fall of Acre, the last bulwark of the Christians in Palestine was overthrown.

The crusades are the wonders of the history of the middle ages; but they are easy to be accounted for. The worship of holy relics naturally extended itself, till it was thought by the more pious and devoted of the Christian world a sin and a shame that the sacred land of Christ's birth and death should be in the hands of the Infidels; and this deep conviction, not being under the control of reason, the flood-gates of fanaticism were unlocked for the iniquitous purposes of extermination, and it was forgotten that the religion of Christ was a religion of peace.

Notwithstanding the religious madness of the crusaders, we ought as Christians to look upon their madness with charity; and while we may lament the outrages of the sword, we should not forget the ardent love for Christ and his cause which burned through the darkness of the times. Let modern zeal burn as brightly—let crusades be made against vice with the same fervour, and we shall be worthy soldiers, indeed, of Christ. It is for us to take the cross, to attack the infidel, not by the sword, but by the pattern of a holy and religious life; that we may win a heavenly Jerusalem, conquer the great enemy of mankind, and receive the reward, even the salvation of our souls.

## JENG HIS KHAN. \*

"As from east unto the west,  
 Some meteor hovers in portentous fate  
 Of ruin unto nations, so did he,  
 Stern master of the firebrand and the sword,  
 And the earth quaked!—Cities were swept away  
 Like dust before the whirlwind."

CALDERON.



WHILE the crusaders were fighting in the west of Asia, the nations of the more easterly part were threatened with extermination by Jenghis Khan, the greatest as well as the most sanguinary conqueror that ever existed. The rapidity of his conquests seemed to emulate those of Alexander, but the cruelties he committed were almost without parallel. I shall not dwell upon these cruelties so revolting to humanity; but a regard to truth will compel me to bring forward those remarkable facts with which the wonderful history of this extraordinary man is interwoven.

The Moguls, or Monguls, over whom this tyrant obtained the supremacy, were a people of Eastern Tartary, divided (as in the present day) into various petty independent hordes, but virtually acknowledging the supremacy of one sovereign, whom they called Tang Khan, or the Great Khan.

It was the great effort of the conqueror's whole life to subjugate entirely to his sway the whole of these hordes. In carrying out this grand design, Jenghis Khan extended his dominions through a space of more than eight hundred leagues from east to west, and about one thousand from north to south, over the most powerful and wealthy kingdoms of Asia. Hence he has been acknowledged as the greatest conqueror that ever filled the Eastern throne.

The ancestors of this great man were renowned for their valour, by which they gradually subdued the tribes around them, and augmented the originally narrow extent of their dominion. His father, Pisaka, first brought under his command the greater part of the chiefs of the Mogul nations. After this, having received an affront from the tribe of Sa Moguls, or the Castors, he entered their territory, which he pillaged; but being opposed by Temagin Khan, who had united against him several bordering tribes, he marched against them in battle array, and defeated them with great slaughter. To commemorate this victory, he gave the name of the vanquished khan to his son, who happened to be born just at the moment of victory. The early name of Jenghis Khan was, therefore, Temagin, and according to the Eastern traditions he is said to have been born with congealed

blood in his hands; from which the astrologers foretold that he would overcome all his enemies in battle, and at length attain to the dignity of Grand Khan of Tartary—a prediction very likely made on the safe side—namely after it had happened.

From his earliest years Temagin, as he must at present be called, exhibited in his conduct all the incipient valour of a hero. At the time of Pisaka's death he was but thirteen years of age; and taking advantage of the old monarch's decease and the tender years of his son, the various Tartar hordes who had been formerly subdued, broke forth into a wide spread rebellion and, threatened to dethrone the young chieftain. Guided, however, by his mother, Ulan, a woman of extraordinary abilities and courage, young Temagin put himself at the head of his troops, engaged the rebels, and having obtained a complete victory over them, forced them into submission. This battle spread the young hero's fame throughout Tartary, and taking advantage of his success, he strengthened his power by putting himself into the hands of the Grand Khan, who gave him his daughter in marriage.

This preference of the Grand Khan for the young warrior offended many of the vassal khans, who entered into a conspiracy to dethrone their sovereign. This conspiracy was carried on so secretly and burst forth so unexpectedly that the khan was taken by surprise, and suffered himself to be surrounded by his enemies. But Temagin, who seemed always to be the more successful the greater his difficulties, put himself at the head of more than five thousand horse; and dashing

like a thunderbolt through the assembled masses, made such a terrible havoc that they fled before the battle could be said to have begun. The Grand Khan then moved onwards with his infantry in a mass, and took several of the rebellious khans and many thousands of their partisans prisoners.

To strike terror into the hearts of the surrounding tribes, Temagin determined to take signal vengeance upon those of the rebellious chieftains who had fallen into his power. He caused seventy large cauldrons to be filled with water and made to boil, and into these he threw the chief rebels. He then marched with fire and sword to the towns and villages of the revolters, and desolated the whole country, so that there was not a house or building standing for several hundred miles. All the male population who could be laid hold of were massacred, and the women and children condemned to perpetual slavery.

Temagin by these successes and by the vigour of his genius, began to excite suspicions in the bosom of the Great Khan. The terror he inspired by his sanguinary cruelty, and the generous behaviour and affable bearing which he exercised towards his friends, were qualities which argued great danger to himself. The khan, therefore, determined that Temagin should be "disposed of," and with the advice of his council, it was determined that both himself and his more intimate friends should be destroyed.

The khan, therefore, ordered a grand entertainment, to which Temagin and all his well-known partisans were invited. At the same time the khan took care to summons a much larger body of his own friends,

most of whom were deadly enemies to the young hero. It was arranged that the khan's friends should sit one on either side of those of Temagin's, and that when the excitement of the banquet was at its height, and the wine had freely circulated; upon a given signal Temagin and his supporters should be suddenly seized, and immediately slain by the assistance of the guards.

The banquet was accordingly prepared, and the guests invited. As the hour approached for this cruel expedient, the wife of Temagin, overcome with fondness and devotion to her husband, revealed to him the plot aimed at his life. At first the young warrior could not believe it, but being convinced by many proofs, he determined to forestall his enemies; and instead of advancing to the banquet in the undress of one bent upon pleasure, he hastily armed himself, and putting himself at the head of a strong body of the troops under his command, told them that a plot had been formed for the murder and dethronement of the khan, and that the conspirators were now ready to commence their work at the banquet. Suspecting that his enemies alone would have arms, he told the soldiers that all who had arms in their hands were traitors, and that they only were to be destroyed.

He then walked into the banquet hall in which all the guests were assembled. The khan on his entrance rose up to receive him, and with outspread arms offered him the seat of honour. Temagin took no notice of this act of dissimulation, but mounting hurriedly to the steps of the throne called out

"Treason!" and drawing his sword, stabbed to the heart the chief councillor of the king, one of his bitterest enemies. His soldiers now rushed in and fell upon every one who offered resistance. Numbers were slain; the khan made a precipitate retreat in the confusion; and in the space of half an hour all the enemies of Temagin were at his feet.

The khan fled, and in a few days mustered his forces and marched upon the capital, of which Temagin had obtained possession, and before the very gates of the palace a furious engagement took place. Temagin singled out his perfidious father in law, and rushing upon him with determinate courage, broke through the band of veteran guards that opposed him, and felled him to the ground with his scymetar. This was the signal for the flight of the khan's army, and Temagin found himself a victor.

Temagin was at this time forty years of age; and seeing himself by this victory master of very extensive dominions, he determined to make his power wear the semblance of legitimacy, and to strengthen it by the public homage of all the suffragan princes of his dominions. He therefore convoked them at Karakorum, his capital, where they all met on the appointed day clothed in white, the emblem of peace and amity. Among them were the princes of the blood attired like the rest. The emperor, with a diadem encircling his brow, advanced into the midst of this august assembly, seated himself on the throne, and received the compliments of the khans and other nobility, who offered up prayers for his health and prosperity.

The assembly then, by a solemn act, proceeded to

IGHIS KHAN.

is successors the sovereignty of  
Each of the khans then did  
ing before him and placing their  
Trumpets then sounded, and  
n was made of the titles of the  
nt of his dominions; while the  
stood forward, and with loud  
nperor to be under the direction

ceremony, and after the first  
s an emperor, Temagin renewed  
n at the head of his army, with  
nies but much more imposing  
his place on an elevated and  
seat on an eminence of turf,  
the assembly with an eloquence  
im, and related to those present  
nd future intentions with regard  
le loudest tumult of applause  
gue, and the whole army bent  
e him.

se was ended, Temagin assumed  
nd abasement; and descending  
is throne with a slow step, he  
upon a piece of thick black felt  
ad on the earth, and the orator  
casion addressed him in the fol-  
ever great the power you possess,  
from Heaven. God will prosper  
you govern your subjects with  
contrary, you abuse the authority  
s, you will become black as the  
, wretched and an outcast!"

Seven khans then assisted the emperor to arise, and conducted him to the throne, and the heralds proclaimed him Emperor of all the Mogul empire. Kokja, one of his relations, was present, a man who by his virtues and sanctity was looked upon as a saint and prophet. He approached the prince and said : "I am come by the command of God to inform you that it is by the divine decrees ordained, that you should henceforth take the name of JENGHIS KHAN, and that all nations of the earth give you that title."

This title signifies the Greatest Khan of Khans, and Jenghis in reply acknowledged his unfitness for so high an appellation ; but said that as God had given it him he would maintain it against all the enemies of God, and the nations over whom he should hereafter rule.

From this time the Moguls thought only of war, and those who resisted them appeared in their eyes to be resisting the decrees of Heaven. Supported by the devotion and enthusiasm of his followers, there was no enterprise, however hazardous, which Jenghis Khan did not think himself equal to accomplish.

Being now at peace with all his neighbours, Jenghis Khan turned his thoughts to foreign conquests ; and the conduct of Wang-yeu-king, Emperor of the Kin, or northern part of China, soon afforded a pretext. This monarch, in an insolent manner, demanded "tribute" from Jenghis Khan for those kingdoms he had conquered, because the former sovereigns of them had paid it from time immemorial. When the ambassadors were introduced to the Tartar conqueror that they might make their demand, he broke into a fit of immoderate laughter. "Fools !" said he, "the

Chinese ought to have the son of Heaven for their master, but at present they cannot show me a man. What, shall the hind rebuke the lion—shall the sheep interrogate the wolf? Go back, and say that the ordained of Heaven payeth tribute to none, and woe be to him that would demand it of him!"

Jenghis Khan immediately assembled a formidable army, composed of veteran troops. The Emperor of the Kin, in the meantime, prepared to repel the invader, and posted troops in immense numbers in all the fortified places of the great wall of China, which bounded that part of this mighty empire.

The advanced army of Jenghis Khan, under the command of Hasar, his brother-in-law, upon entering the Chinese territory found the Prince Yelu Lycw Ko, at the head of a hundred thousand men, ready to declare for Jenghis; and in testimony of his sincerity, that prince ascended the mountain Kin, held to be sacred, and sacrificing a white horse and a black ox, broke an arrow in token of perpetual friendship with Jenghis Khan, who conferred upon him the title of king. He then advanced with his new allies through all the northern part of China; and, resolving to attack the country on every side, he mixed his Tartarian and Chinese troops together, forming out of them four armies. One he ordered to encamp to the north of Yeu-King, the imperial city; another to ravage the country to the north and east; the third under the command of three of his sons was to destroy all the south and south-west; while he himself marched towards the capital of Shang Tong.

The Chinese for their defence sent all the best troops to guard the difficult passages of the rivers

and mountains, and compelled every man from sixteen to sixty to take up arms. The khan hearing of this ordered his generals to take all the old men, women, and children out of the towns and villages, and set them in front of the army as it advanced towards the various cities to be assaulted. The people from the walls hearing the voices of their own countrymen, who called upon them to submit to the conqueror rather than destroy them with their missles, were overpowered with the appeal, and refused to defend themselves. Thus Jenghis Khan advanced with little opposition.

The desolation now became general through the whole of Northern China, and the conqueror plundered and destroyed more than ninety cities; reduced to ashes an infinite number of towns and villages; took all the gold, silver, and silk, he met with; massacred thousands of the destitute people; and carried into slavery great numbers of young women and children. All this devastation happened in the year 1213.

Jenghis Khan now turned his arms towards the southern provinces of China, and the dread of his name caused submission every where. Lyew-ko, who commanded the expedition, sent to the khan ninety wagons loaded with rich presents and a list of the families that had submitted to him, amounting to above six hundred thousand; and the whole of the southern provinces were in a few months subdued.

The conqueror now marched to the westward of China, and placed himself at the head of the army. Before he set out he declared his brother regent of the whole empire. His course, was as usual, successful. He defeated an army of three hundred thousand sent to oppose him, took all the principal cities, and was

acknowledged sole lord of this part of China. Returning again northwards, the great Chinese capital fell into his hands ; and thus, in the space of five years, the Mogul found himself master of the whole celestial empire.

Jenghis Khan now wished to repose himself in his enormous possessions, and to make the domains of Mohammed, Sultan of Karazim, the boundary of his empire; and for a time harmony subsisted between the two monarchs. At length, however, the sultan became jealous of the Mogul, and treated his people with some insults, which obliged Jenghis Khan to complain.

Mohammed had a very dangerous enemy in Nasser, Caliph of Bagdad, who, excited by revenge for some affront he had received, determined to form an alliance with Jenghis Khan. He accordingly opened a communication with him, by means of a messenger who had been rendered dumb by the cutting out of his tongue. To ensure perfect secrecy, and to prevent any credentials from falling into the hands of his enemies, Mohammed ordered his whole plan to be engraved on the bare head of the slave, by means of a needle and coloured drugs. As soon as the hair was a little grown he set off, and on his arrival he was shaved and the caliph's intentions made known.

In a short time the Great Khan assembled his forces, and ordered recruits to be raised throughout the whole of his dominions. He published an edict denouncing death to the coward, and offering rewards to the valiant ; and everything being ready for the war, he marched himself with his army to attack the dominions of the Sultan Mohammed, relying upon the co-operation of the Caliph of Bagdad.

The advanced guard of the khan was led by his son Juji; and Mohammed, by forced marches, arrived at the borders of Turkestan with a view of cutting him off before his father should come up; but the attempt was unsuccessful. The Moguls prevailed. Jenghis Khan advanced, and several of the larger cities fell into his hands. He still pressed forward, his object being to get possession of Bochara, the centre of the sultan's dominions, where all his wealth was lodged.

To this city the khan soon laid siege, and after reducing the inhabitants to a dreadful state of privation, he obliged it to surrender.

When he had taken possession of the city, he entered on horseback into the great mosque, and asked merrily if it was the sultan's palace. On being told it was the house of God, he alighted; and giving the principal magistrate his horse to hold, he ascended into the high place where the most sacred of the priests officiated, and taking the koran from its archives cast it into the court below under his horse's feet. The soldiers, taking this act as their licence, began to eat, drink and be merry in the sacred place, and the work of confusion and demolition began.

The khan commanded, under the most dreadful threats, all the treasures of the city and mosques to be brought to him; but as several of the inferior officers and soldiers had concealed themselves in the city with their booty, he became enraged, and setting guards at the several gates he ordered the whole place to be fired, and the whole of Bochara was destroyed, with the exception of the sultan's palace and a few brick houses.

It would be quite impossible in a work of this kind to enter into the particulars of all the cities taken, and battles fought at this period. The devastation of the Great Khan was like that of a thunderbolt bursting over several countries at once, involving them in flames and ruin. The celerity and military exploits of Jenghis cannot be illustrated by a more appropriate comparison. His generals rushed upon the whole empire of Karazin at once, and enveloped it in one conflagration. The most beautiful and flourishing cities were reduced to ashes; a whole country was laid desolate and depopulated; and the Khan marched forward as the lord of another extensive empire, and the conqueror of one who held in subjection not only Karazin, but all Persia, Persian Irah, and the frontiers of India.

Mohammed, harassed without intermission, seeing the cities of Khojend, Samarcand, Herat, and other important places submitting to the enemy, fled to a small town on the borders of the Caspian sea. But he soon received tidings that the Tartars were advancing; and leaving the habitation in which he sought for repose, he fled to the sea, and threw himself into a small boat which lay on the shore. He reached by this a smaller vessel, but a shower of arrows fell upon him as he got on board. Thus harassed to the last, the unhappy monarch had but time to reach another place of shelter when his excessive fatigue and misfortunes brought on a fever, which speedily deprived him of life, and the Khan of his most dangerous enemy.

The winter now set in, and Jenghis Khan, knowing the necessity of active exertions for his troops, ordered

great hunting matches to be made on the extensive plains of Bochara, after the custom of the Tartar nation, which is as follows:—The huntsmen trace out a circle of several miles, perhaps fifty in circumference, around which troops are ranged. The soldiers then march onwards upon a centre point to the sound of martial music, and continue gradually to converge together, driving before them the animals within the circle, but without killing or wounding any of them, even of the most ferocious. At night they encamp in the same order as is observed in war. The march lasts several weeks—the space gradually lessens, and the animals for want of room come into contact, and the weaker become the prey of the stronger. At length, when the circle is so diminished that all the animals may be seen together, the martial music strikes up, and the sounds, together with the shouts and cries of the hunters and soldiers, terrify them so, that they are easily slaughtered.

The soldiers having been engaged in this mode of hunting for several weeks, the circle at last was so reduced, as to present a most extraordinary sight. Hundreds of both wild and tame animals were ranging about, the carnivorous ones ferociously preying upon the graminivorous, and the whole in a state of excessive alarm. Into this circle the Grand Khan and his sons entered, and having attacked and slain several of the larger animals, they then retired to an eminence, and, from a throne erected for the purpose, viewed the attack on the rest by the generals, officers, and soldiers.

When the princes and great lords had given sufficient proof of their courage and agility, the young

soldiers were allowed to enter the circle, and make what havoc they pleased. After many had shown their courage to those present, by the slaughter of the ferocious animals, the khan's sons, attended by several young noblemen, approached the throne, and entreated the monarch to spare the remaining animals. This request being granted, a grand entertainment was given to the officers, and the troops were sent back to their quarters.

Such was the Tartar chase, carried out upon the most extensive scale ever witnessed by Jenghis Khan, and the model of which he left to his successors.

Mohammed, whose death has been mentioned, left a son, Jalaloddin, who inherited many of his father's virtues, and excelled him in invincible bravery. He endeavoured to make head against the great conqueror; but in the same manner that Jenghis Khan surrounded his animals in the Tartar chase did he encompass and close upon the army of his new enemy, till he had confined him in a small island on the borders of the Indus. Reduced to this extremity, Jalaloddin determined upon making a desperate effort for his kingdom; he burned all his ships, except one for his family, to deprive his army of any hope of escape, and then waited with fortitude for the approach of the khan. His soldiers, surrounded like the animals in the chase, defended themselves like lions and tigers roused from their momentary stupor; but their courage could not avail them. The khan poured his troops upon them with the impetuosity of a mountain torrent, and reduced a force of seven thousand to less than seven hundred men. Jalaloddin was himself hard pressed by his foes, and driven

to the brink of the river. Here stopping for a moment, he tore off his cuirass and threw away all his arms, except his sword, bow and quivers, and then mounting his horse plunged into the river.

Jenghis Khan, desirous of taking Jalaloddin alive, ranged his forces in the form of a bow, of which the river represented the string. When the sultan was in the middle of the river, he stopped to insult Jenghis, who was standing on the bank applauding his courage. Several brave Mogul captains would have thrown themselves into the river to swim after Jalaloddin. The khan, however, would not permit them, but turning to his own children who stood around him, he said, "Happy is the father that can boast of such a son, and happy is the son that can boast of such a father! To brave dangers is to subdue them! My children, learn of a brave man, whenever you see him, although he may be an enemy! Let the brave go free!" Saying this, he gave orders that Jalaloddin should not be pursued.

While Jenghis Khan on one side of the empire had fixed the Indus as its limit, his lieutenants on the other had subjugated Persia, enclosed the Caspian sea within his dominion, and carried their victorious arms as far as Icenium. As soon as the princes and generals had returned from their several expeditions, he encamped them on a plain of twenty-one miles in extent, and even this space was scarcely capacious enough for the tents and equipages of all those that were convoked.

The khan's quarters alone occupied nearly six miles in circumference. Streets, squares, and markets were appointed, and tents were pitched for his house-

hold. The tent designed for the convoked princes, grand officers, generals, and ambassadors from foreign courts, would contain two thousand persons. It was of the purest white silk, ornamented with gold, and surrounded on all sides with banners and emblems of the various provinces over which the great conqueror was master. In the midst of it a magnificent throne was erected, supported on lions of gold, and blazing with precious stones. It was approached by twelve steps covered with cloth of gold embroidered with rubies, and fringed on either side with turquoises fantastically woven. Above it was a gorgeous canopy, suspended from the roof of the tent by a dragon composed of gold and gems, the spoil of the victory over the Chinese empire. The canopy itself was of yellow silk, and so glittered with diamonds, both within and without, that it was almost too brilliant to look upon.

In the midst of this galaxy of splendour sat the khan, alone and solitary; around him on the lower steps of his throne were his sons; and in front stood the great officers of his empire in their rich robes and insignia of office. Below all and forming a large black spot on the floor, was the black felt, the well-known symbol of the original poverty of the Moguls, and an object of the deepest veneration; for it reminded their rulers of the "dark grave" to which they must one day return, and thus spoke a valuable lesson to the pomp and state of monarchs.

When the khan rose, the whole assembly bowed their heads to the earth before him. Waving his hand as a signal for all to rise and be seated, he then advanced to the steps of the throne; and, as he

was a very excellent orator he addressed those present in a long speech, beginning in this remarkable manner,—

"I am nothing!" He then took a rapid review of the great transactions in which he had been engaged, of the battles he had waged, of the victories he had won, of the powerlessness of all who had ever raised hands against him; and then he launched forth into praise of those strict Tartar laws, which, by imparting discipline to his troops, rendered him invincible. He called upon God to witness that in all his doings he had been impelled by a spirit of justice. That he loved mercy, and that although his wrath was terrible, his friendship was strong. "I am nothing!" he exclaimed several times in his discourse, "but a tool in the hands of the great worker of all great things. Those who obey me obey the destiny that impels me, which never wavers and never fails. I exhort and command you, my people, to be strong in valour, vigorous in enterprise, sudden in attack, quick in reprisal, and nimble as the lightning in war. If I have passed from the East into the West like a meteor, it is in this spirit. If the Tartar name is to endure, it will be by the power of activity; be, therefore, active to the last, and confident that a great destiny is to be accomplished by your arms!"

Such was nearly the concluding act of the course of this great man. He afterwards reduced the kingdom of Hya, after it had continued for two hundred years under its own princes. This triumph was followed as usual by others, for all his enterprises were crowned with victory. Prosperity and success, indeed, never deserted him even to his death.

life ; for be assured that "great conquerors" do exist even in the meanest state. We have all much to oppose us : empires of self-will to overcome, tyrant passions to overthrow, citadels of pride to attack, and whole empires of selfishness to subdue. Should we become conquerors in these things we shall attain what many great worldly conquerors seldom do—namely, an inheritance and a kingdom which shall not share in the fate of dynasties, or the ruin of empires.

## JOAN OF ARC, THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

"Woman's worth  
 And woman's value issue forth at times,  
 Like comets blazing through the starry space,  
 To stir a feeble world. When man despairs,  
 Woman still hopes; when he becomes cast down,  
 She rises all triumphantly, and gives  
 New courage and new life."—FERRIERA.



It was a belief prevalent in the middle ages, that particular individuals were gifted with supernatural powers, as instruments of the divine will. This superstitious notion was kept alive by the priesthood of those days, who frequently turned it to the advantage of great political leaders, or the factions which they ruled. When this truth is considered, of which the whole of what are termed the middle ages furnish examples, the story of the Maid of Orleans is in no way extraordinary. We are astonished, not at synods and councils making a verity of vague hallucinations,

or at a credulous population becoming infatuated with miraculous pretension, but with the strong enthusiasm which could lead a young rustic to marshal armies, storm cities, and crown monarchs.

To understand the story of the Maid of Orleans, the young reader must remember, that after the death of Charles VI., King of France, in 1422, Henry VI. of England, then a child of nine years old, was proclaimed King of France according to the treaty of Troyes, which was signed in 1420. His uncle, the Duke of Bedford, acted as regent. France had been distracted for more than forty years by civil dissensions. On one side were Queen Isabella, the Duke of Burgundy, and England; on the other, the Dauphin Charles, who had been abandoned by his own mother, but supported by the Orleans party. This division, and the talents of the English generals, the Earls of Somerset, Warwick, Salisbury, Suffolk, Arundel, Talbot, and Sir John Falstofe, had reduced nearly all France to the dominion of England. The dauphin, a youth of nineteen, was crowned at Poictiers as King Charles VII. He possessed many qualities proper for interesting his countrymen in his favour, and was wanting only in firmness and resolution. Instead of ruling himself, he entrusted the affairs of his kingdom to unworthy favorites, whence his court was one scene of intrigues, jealousies, and dissensions.

Under such a state of things, it was not very likely that much progress could be made against the English, who were now determined to cross the Loire, and carry their conquests further than Henry V.

had ever penetrated ; and at length, Bourges and the territory belonging to it were all that remained to Charles in France, while Paris, and the whole of Northern France, were in the possession of the English.

Since the reduction of Paris by the English invaders, the city of Orleans, advantageously situated on the Loire, had been considered as the centre of the kingdom. Whatever fragments of prosperity remained were gathered within its walls. Its fall would have the most fatal effects in the cause of French national independence, and the best road to the provinces of the south lay through it. It was, therefore, determined to reduce it by siege or blockade, but the project had been imprudently divulged, and the Earl of Salisbury had great difficulty to reach the place with his investing army. He, however, took up his positions both on the left and right bank of the river, and began the difficult operation of girding a large and populous town in the best possible state of preparation, with a small army of about ten thousand men. The inhabitants had provided themselves with all sorts of warlike stores and provisions, being determined to defend the place to the last extremity. The citizens had exercised themselves in the use of arms, had voluntarily taxed themselves to a high amount, had lent their money, and had made the most liberal sacrifices of all kinds. The suburbs on either side of the river contained many excellent houses, and upwards of twelve churches, together with several fine mansions for the recreation of the burgesses. But, by the advice of the military officers there, the citizens burnt them with

their own hands, and levelled all with the ground, so that they might discharge their cannon freely on every side ; at the same time they left the English without shelter from the rains and snows of the coming winter. Supplies were also poured in from various quarters, and the French seemed determined, in spite of every effort of their enemies, to hold the city.

During the winter, however, the English harassed the besieged with several assaults, intercepting their succours, and cut off every kind of communication. Early in the winter months the Duke of Bedford collected five hundred wagons ; these were laden with stores and provisions for the army, and put under the escort of Sir John Falstofe and sixteen hundred fighting men. This the French determined to intercept, and a force of four thousand men at arms, under the command of Lord Charles of Bourbon, came suddenly up with Sir John at the village of Rouvrai, between Grenville and Orleans. The English commander making the best of a short notice, formed a square with his carts and waggons, leaving but two openings. He posted his archers in these two gaps, the men at arms standing hard by to support them. The enemy came on, and made sure of destroying them speedily, and making prize of their stores. The Constable of Scotland, with the Scotch division of the French, for they were French allies at this time, made a great charge at one of the openings of the square ; but the English archers shot so well and stiffly that they were slain almost to a man on the spot. The French, having received a volley of arrows, and being frightened by the cheering of the English,

ran away immediately, leaving behind them nearly a thousand slain, chiefly Scotch; while Sir John refreshed his men and passed on in handsome array with their convoy and artillery, and arrived in triumph before the city of Orleans.

King Charles, on learning the news of this defeat, was sick at heart, and the great vigour with which the English now pressed the siege of Orleans made most of his party despair. The English general had dug trenches quite round the city, and no one could pass in or out. Provisions began to fail; murmurs resounded through the city; and Charles was in despair.

But at this moment deliverance was at hand. This deliverer was, however, neither prince, warrior, nor statesman, marshalled hosts, or trusty swords—it was a poor country girl—a good and a devout one—an artless and sincere one. It was Joan of Arc. This heroine was the daughter of a humble farmer, and was only remarkable for her piety and devotion; but for these she was famed all over the canton. Her temperament was enthusiastic and melancholic; and passing much of her time among the hills, she there mused in solitude over the wondrous legends of saints and virgin martyrs which had been impressed upon her tender infancy. The passing traveller frequently brought news of the cruel war that was desolating the fertile plains of France, and occasionally the quiet marches of Lorraine witnessed the destructive progress of hostile bands. From her earliest years Joan had listened to these tales of horror, and the miseries of the land became mixed with her dreams of heaven. As she approached towards womanhood, her ardent imagination pictured forth the glory of setting a coun-

try free, and she fancied that she saw bright lights in the heavens, and angel voices calling her to the mighty work. There was, too, an old prophecy in the country that France should be restored by a spotless virgin, and Joan thought herself called to be that virgin deliverer.

A short time after these convictions had taken possession of her mind, a troop of Bourguignons drove all the good people from Domremy, her dwelling place, and burnt their church. Joan, with her family, took refuge for a short time in a humble inn in the town of Neufchateau, where she heard many more relations of the sad events that were passing in France. From this time her visions became more frequent. She said that her voices told her that she was the veritable virgin that must go and conduct the dauphin, for so according to her account Charles was to be called until he was crowned, to Rheims.

After much solicitation Joan prevailed upon her parents to bring her before the Sire de Baudrecourt, the commander at Vaucouleurs, with whom, after much difficulty, she obtained an audience. This knight took her for one crazed, and dismissed her without a hearing. She now took up her abode in the churches, and fasted and prayed with scarcely any intermission. The fame of her sanctity grew and spread; for she was looked upon as a saint, and the multitude flocked to her. This determined Baudrecourt to satisfy himself more fully as to her mission, and he confronted her with a priest, armed with a stole, a crucifix, and holy water; and this clerk adjured her, if she were an evil spirit, to depart from thence. Joan crawled upon her knees to embrace

the cross; a sure sign, according to the theory of those times, that she was no witch or sorceress; but still the Sire of Baudrecourt was credulous as to the divine nature of her mission.

Some time after this, Joan became possessed with the determination of seeking the rendezvous of Charles, and throwing herself before him. "I am called," she said, "by an irresistible voice, to deliver my country. I am called to save my king. Voices whisper to me by day, and call vehemently to me at night. There is no help but in me; the voices have said it!"

De Metz, an old burgher, and his friend, Bertrand de Poulengi, fell under the conviction that the maid was destined to save France. Baudrecourt was again consulted; and at last gave his permission for these persons to conduct her to the king. The people of Vaucouleurs eagerly furnished Joan with everything she wished. The voices had long before told the maiden to put on male attire, which she now did.

A horse was brought to her, spurs were affixed to her heels, and Baudrecourt gave her a sword. When everything was ready for her departure, the governor received the oaths of the two squires, that they would faithfully conduct her to the king; and she rode away, followed by the squires and four servants mounted.

The country through which the maid had to travel was occupied by the English, and many were the perils she encountered. On one occasion she was challenged by a party of English horse, and nothing but her address and the fleetness of her steed prevented her from falling into their hands. "Pass!" said she, in French, and galloped through them.

On another occasion, the keeper of an inn where she lodged for the night, suspecting her to be on some secret embassy, sent off for assistance that she might be seized; but Joan departed long before daylight, and so evaded the danger. But at last she got safely to Chinon, and the accomplishment of such a journey was in itself a miracle. After three days of doubt and suspicion, Charles consented to receive her; for messages had been brought from Orleans that he would aid his faithful city, and he saw no earthly means at hand.

Joan was introduced to the king, surrounded by his court and council. She entered the apartment with an undaunted air. "Gentle dauphin," said she, "I am Joan, the maid. I come with a commission from the King of heaven to drive out your enemies and conduct you to Rheims, where you shall receive the crown of France, which is your right." Charles looked upon the maid for a moment; and when he gazed upon her delicate and gentle features, and saw the bright fire of enthusiasm glowing in her eyes, he could not refrain from believing in her sincerity. He took her aside; entered into conversation with her; and, having satisfied himself that she was no impostor, brought her forth again before his nobles, and declared himself convinced that God had placed the fate of France in the hands of the maiden.

From this moment the mission of Joan was received as divine. France soon rang from one end to the other with the glad tidings of a deliverer. Some even looked upon her as a manifestation of the Virgin of old, the safeguard of France, made in a season of the most extreme peril. But, to make assurance

doubly sure, Joan was confronted with the highest dignitaries of the church—the more subtil members of the universities; but her answers to these high personages were clear and to the purpose. "If God intends to deliver France," said one of her interrogators, "where is the use of fighting?" "The help shall come while we are fighting," replied Joan. "What sign have you to give us," said Friar Seguin, "that you are to be the deliverer of France?" "The sign that I am to give," said Joan, "is the raising of the siege of Orleans!" One of the black letter doctors ventured to suggest that she was ignorant, and knew not A from B. "I know not A from B," answered Joan, "but I know what you know not—that I am commissioned to raise the siege of Orleans; to see the king crowned at Rheims; and, if you be faithful, to recover France from its enemies."

Ordeals and examinations were now at an end; Joan was installed as a knight, a splendid milk-white courser was brought forth, upon which she mounted. She had a squire appointed, two pages, and two heralds. A complete suit of armour was made for her. Her sword was an ancient blade, bearing the mark of five crosses. Her standard, which was made to her order, was white dotted with *fleurs-de-lis*; on one side was figured the Almighty, on the other side were inscribed the words "Jhesus Maria." She gave another standard to her chaplain, who was to bear it aloft, at the head of a body of priests, which at her request was to follow her in all her military operations. When mounted on her snow-white charger, in her bright new armour, and with her banner spread before her, the people could not sufficiently

admire her noble and martial appearance; and the effect upon the army was electric. It infused new courage to the wavering, imparted more strength to the strong, and thousands now began to rush towards the standard of the maid, who had long kept aloof from that of the king.

A great convoy of provisions was prepared at Blois for the relief of the people and garrison of Orleans, who were now reduced to the greatest extremity; and a convoy of men at arms, raised by the enthusiasm which Joan inspired, gladly undertook the task of conveying it to the besieged city, Joan being their leader. The news of Joan's approach soon reached the garrison, who believing that heaven had appointed them a deliverer, summoned up all their remaining energies to fall upon their enemies. Joan proceeded in the convoy of boats prepared for the stores, up the river Loire, flanked by an immense body of horse that kept close to the river. As they approached Orleans, when the garrison beheld her virgin banner floating from the prow of her barge, they immediately armed and sallied out at the several gates like so many mountain torrents; shouting, "The maid from Heaven shall save us! The virgin is our safeguard!" and attacked the English with such vigour, that under cover of the sortie, Joan, her escort, and the stores were safely lodged within the walls of the town, and *Orleans was saved.*

The English camp was now as sad as the city of Orleans was joyous. The soldiers had borne the risks and privations of besieging a large town without murmuring; but their hearts were not proof against superstition. For two months the whole country had

resounded with the powers of the wonderful maid, whom they verily believed to be an instrument of Heaven raised up against them. It was in vain that the Earl of Suffolk and other captains tried to check this despondency; in vain they represented the whole of the affair as a miserable juggl, got up by their enemies; and in hinting that Joan was an envoy from the Prince of Darkness, so far from encouraging the soldiers, it had quite a contrary effect, for it agreed with their notions of things; and the men said, that as brave soldiers, they would fight against any earthly enemy, but that they were unequal to a contest with the powers of darkness. The consequence was inevitable. They began to see strange sights in the clouds; the sentinels were startled at night by strange sounds; some saw figures on horseback at nightfall galloping through the air, and others were quite sure that the moon and stars were getting out of order. At the same time reinforcements were pouring in to the French, while the English received no succour, and in every skirmish the French were victorious.

Joan had already caused to be written a letter to the enemy, calling on him to "depart;" and now she determined to address the English by word of mouth. Mounting on a tower opposite to the end of the bridge held by the English, she raised her voice like a prophet of old, and told them to "begone out of France;" that God's hand was upraised to destroy them; that she was commissioned to drive them to the sea, to retrieve the lost glory of her country, and to give the throne to its rightful king. Sir William Gladesdale replied to her with words of abuse, and told her to go back and take care of her

cows. Upon this, she told Gladesdale that his days were numbered ; which prediction was fulfilled within a short time afterwards.

Within the town, Joan was still revered as an angel from heaven, at least, by the common people ; and her conduct was calculated to preserve and strengthen this feeling. She was most constant at mass and prayer ; she rarely spoke without an allusion to the Virgin Mother, and the heavenly voice that guided and inspired her. She denounced the vices of the army, and did all in her power to bring back the soldiers from the licentiousness common to a warlike life. At times, she paraded through the town on her milk-white charger, preceded by the sacred banner and followed by a long line of priests bearing crosses and relics. The poor people, who came from all parts to see her, when they could not have the supreme felicity of touching her hand or foot, were happy in being able to reach the horse she rode upon.

But the siege of Orleans was not yet raised—the sign which was to declare Joan to be a child and minister of heaven. The Bastard was now approaching with other succours. Joan, at the head of a valiant band, rode forth to meet him, and conducted him in triumph into the town in spite of the English army, who remained almost paralysed in their trenches. On the same day, after she had lain down to rest, she suddenly awoke, sprung up from her bed, and called for her arms. A divine voice, she declared, had told her to go out and fight the English. She took her banner in her hands, and rode to the gates of the city. Beholding a wounded Frenchman brought in, " Ha !" she cried " I never could see the blood of a

Frenchman without wishing to avenge him!" She instantly resolved to head an attack in person; the bastard hurried to join her in force. The maid led the assault with the intrepidity of a veteran; the French followed her with enthusiasm; and after a desperate fight of three hours, the English were repulsed, and some of their out-posts carried. No quarter was given, and the English were horribly massacred.

Two days after, a grand assault was resolved upon by Joan. It began about ten o'clock; and notwithstanding their superstitious fears, the English fought bravely and for a time repulsed their assailants. But about two o'clock, Joan planted a scaling-ladder on the wall of one of the English posts, and mounted to the parapet; she was struck at the same moment by an arrow, and fell into the ditch below. She was not killed, but stunned. The English shouted when they saw her fall, and concluded her dead; but when, shortly after, she appeared on the wall encouraging the French to ascend the height on which she stood and urging them to the assault, the English soldiers felt assured that she was more than mortal; and, as the superstitious panic spread, some of them fancied that they saw St. Michael the Archangel, the patron Saint of the city of Orleans, riding on a white horse and fighting for the French. At the same time, the English were assaulted on all sides. Sir William Gladesdale and all his knights were slain. The French became masters of the tottering walls of the Tournelles, which were heaped within and without with piles of dead bodies. Scarcely an Englishman of any condition escaped; but for every one that fell

there were fallen at least ten Frenchmen, so that Joan's miracle was not achieved without cost. That evening she entered the city in triumph, by the bridge which had been for so many months a closed passage. That night, a council of war was held in the English camp, and the Earl of Suffolk, Talbot, and the other captains agreed, that the siege should be raised ; and as the day dawned, they left their towers and entrenchments, and drew out in open array, hoping to tempt the triumphant army of Orleans to come forth and give them battle. After waiting for some time, they then burnt or blew up their works and marched on the road to Paris, retiring in perfect order with their colours proudly flying. Thus was raised the memorable siege of Orleans, on the 8th of May, 1429.\*

As soon as the siege was raised, Joan went from Orleans to meet King Charles, who had, as usual, kept himself aloof from danger. She was received with great honour by the court, and the courtiers proposed to regale her with feasts and entertainments ; but Joan told them it was no time for feasting and dancing—that there was much work to do, and that she had but a short time upon earth to do it in.

Charles now collected all his forces on the left bank of the Loire ; within four weeks the white banner of the maid was unfurled before Sorgeau, and in ten days was planted on the walls of that fortress. Talbot drew out the troops from the castles and forts that lay in his way on the road to Paris, but

\* Hist. de Pucelle; Monstrellet; Vellanet; Barante.

being met by a reinforcement of four thousand men, he halted at Patay.

The French, however, hesitated to attack the English in open field, for they recollect Agincourt, Crevant, and Verneuil. "We had better wait," they said, "for more horse." "Have you good spurs," said Joan. "Ride on in the name of the Lord, and conquer. The English are delivered over into my hands. You have but to smite them."

Encouraged by this confidence, the French advanced upon the English, who were panic-stricken. The archers had not nerve to fix their staves, and their arms seemed paralyzed when they tried to draw the bow, once their main stay in the battle, and were disordered and ridden down by the enemy's horse. They were slaughtered in heaps, and the cavalry that ought to have supported them fled from the field. The brave Talbot was made prisoner; with him were taken Lords Scales, Hungerford, and many other noble captains, and twelve hundred remained dead on the field.

The French were overbearing in their new success, and as proud of the battle of Patay as if they had gained it with an inferior force. They could not conceal their exultation from their noble captives. "Well, Talbot," said the Duke of Alengon, "you did not expect this, this morning." "It is the fortune of war," said the English nobleman, without any emotion.

Immediately after the battle, the Maid of Orleans rode to the king, who, though he had taken the field, still kept his precious person far enough from the scenes of actual warfare. Joan insisted upon his repairing immediately to Rheims, although the road

to that city was almost entirely through a country still occupied by the English ; and after some hesitation the king set out with a moderate force, composed entirely of horse. The important town of Auxerre made a submissive treaty. From Auxerre Charles marched to Troyes, which at first seemed inclined to stand out ; but the maid's good genius prevailed, and this city opened its gates to what they believed to be a heaven-directed conqueror.

When Joan was about to enter the town, she was met by Brother Richard, who rapidly made many signs of the cross, and sprinkled holy water upon the threshold of the gate ; for the friar was not quite certain that she might not be an evil spirit, and the good people were sorely afraid of her. But as the maid stood this proof, she was instantly proclaimed as an angel.

From Troyes, Charles marched to Rheims, where the people, greatly alarmed at all they had heard of the miraculous maid, rose in his favour, expelled all the officers of Bedford and Burgundy, and threw open the gates at his approach. On the 15th of July, 1429, escorted by Joan and a host of priests, Charles made his solemn entrance into Rheims, and two days after he was anointed and crowned in the Cathedral Church. Next to himself, the most conspicuous figure in this ceremony was Joan of Arc, who stood close by his side, bearing aloft her white standard.

When the king was crowned, she threw herself at his feet in tears, and all present wept when they heard the words she uttered. "Gentle king, now is accomplished the will of God, who would have you

come hither to Rheims to receive your consecration ! You are the true king, to whom the kingdom of France rightly belongs ! ” And immediately after the coronation, she besought Charles to let her depart in peace, now that her mission was fulfilled by his coronation.

When Joan was asked what she intended to do with herself, she said she would return to her native village, to her father and mother, who longed to see her again ; and that then she would tend her flocks and herds as she had done before. This modesty, this absence of all worldly ambition, gained her fresh consideration, and touched the hearts of some who had been disposed to consider her an impostor, hunting after wealth and honours.

Bedford had marched into Normandy, which was invaded by the Constable Richemont. When he was at some distance Charles turned round upon Paris, with the hope of taking it during the Regent’s absence. Beauvais, St. Denis, and other places in the neighbourhood of the capital, opened their gates to him ; but the walls of Paris were defended by a small but determined garrison of the English. An attack was ordered, and on the 12th of September an assault was made on the Fauxbourg or Suburb of St. Honoré. The Maid of Orleans was foremost in scaling the walls, but her white banner was no longer victorious ; she was wounded and thrown down into the ditch, where her repulsed companions basely abandoned her. She crawled out of the ditch, and lay for some time alive among the dead, for the cannons, culverins, and arrows of the English were very active, and made great havoc among the assailants. Then rising, she

waved her banner and cheered on the men to a fresh assault. The soldiers lost heart, and still fell back by troops until she was left alone. Some better spirits, ashamed to see a woman stand her ground while the main of the army skulked behind some mounds of earth, where they were safe from the enemy's fire, moved forward and tried another assault ; but they were driven back in the greatest confusion, and fled, bearing the maid with them.

It was now evening, and the whole force marched away to St. Denis, where Charles had remained the whole day. It was evident that Joan's influence was fast declining, and that even the common soldiers were no longer inspired by her presence. A few days before the unsuccessful attack on Paris, she had found some of them committing shameful disorders, and she beat them soundly with the flat part of her sword. It was the miraculous blade marked with the five crosses which she had discovered in the church of St. Catherine at Fierbois, and which she had worn ever since. She was grieved at the accident, but the soldiers were more than grieved ; for they were disposed to think that her virtue lay in the sword, and that it departed from her when that sword was broken. Besides, they were weary of her rigid system of morals —captains, as well as men, laid the whole blame of their recent failure upon her. " You are a false prophetess," they cried, " you said that we should have slept this night in Paris." " And so you would," said Joan, " if you had fought as I fought."

Every day convinced Joan that her mission was led. She no longer heard the soul-cheering voices it used to awaken in her dreams of hope and

inspired her with confidence, and she went to the abbey church and hung up her suit of white armour before the shrine of St. Denis. But Charles compelled her still to attend his fortunes, thinking she might yet be of some little use.

Charles now departed from St. Denis, and Bedford soon after returned from Normandy, and marched into Paris in triumph, but was soon after obliged to return again to Normandy, in company with the Duke of Burgundy. During their absence, a formidable conspiracy was aroused in favour of Charles, but it was discovered, and a number of the conspirators were beheaded, drowned, or tortured to death. A new plot was formed upon Joan's approach, but this was also discovered, and all concerned in it massacred.

Not being able to make any impression on Paris, Joan marched to the relief of Compiegne, which was besieged by the people of Duke Philip. On approaching the town, she found that the duke had come up in person, and that he was pressing the siege with the whole army, arrested by a body of English under the command of Sir John Montgomery. She however fought her way into Compiegne with a considerable reinforcement.

On the same day, promising herself the same brilliant success which had attended her at Orleans, she made a sortie and fell upon the enemy's lines. She surprised one of their positions, and killed a great many men; but the whole Bourguignon force collected to a point, and drove her back. With her usual intrepidity, she threw herself into the rear of her now flying host, and she several times drew rein, and rallying some of her men, faced about and fought,

in order to check the pursuers. In this manner of fighting and retreating, she nearly reached the entrance of the town ditch ; but there she was pulled from her horse by an archer, and her troops, without pausing to rescue her, basely fled over the drawbridge and closed the gate upon her. Joan rose, and tried to defend herself with a long sword which she had taken from the enemy a few days before ; but her efforts were in vain. She was surrounded by her enemies ; her friends made no sally to save her ; and so she was at last surrendered to the Bastard of Vendôme, who carried her in triumph to the hostile camp.

Joan now languished in a prison. Her friends forgot her ; and her enemies, who conceived her to be the cause of all their reverses, longed to reduce her to ashes. All the English, and at least, one half of the French, firmly believed that all she had done had been by the direct agency of Satan. The Bishop of Beauvais claimed the right of conducting her trial ; and the Duke of Bedford wished it to be conducted in such a manner as to make a great impression on the whole kingdom ; and priests, and lawyers, and lettered men were summoned from all parts, and upwards of a hundred doctors assembled to exercise their ingenuity in detecting impossible crimes.

For sixteen days, Joan was sharply interrogated by men who were eager to detect a lurking devil in everything she said, and who cross-examined her and twisted her words, with all the adroitness of the schools. Though frequently puzzled by the long hard words they used, Joan pleaded her cause with great spirit, at times confounding the doctors with

her prompt and clear replies, and her plain good sense ; for still, on all points but one, she was perfectly rational.

When the Bishop of Beauvais saw that her simple eloquence was producing an effect, he raised his voice angrily and silenced her. The principal object was to terrify or entrap her into a confession that she had been dealing with evil spirits, and was a sorceress. But Joan maintained that her visitants were not demons of darkness, but angels of light, and that it was impossible Satan could have any influence over one so pure and innocent as herself.

When questioned upon her attachment to the Catholic church, she said, that her whole life bore witness in its favour ; that she had been constant in her duties and ceremonies even in the midst of war and carnage ; but they drew from her an admission that she could not submit to the ministers of that church, when her voices ordered the contrary. This was fatal to her ; and the court drew up articles of condemnation.

After undergoing trying examinations in the court, the maid was tormented in her cell by monks and confessors, who constantly represented that the church who had tried her was infallible in matters of faith, and that it was most merciful to those who recanted and submitted to its authority. These reasonings had their effect ; and the poor maiden was staggered at the array of bishops, doctors, and devout priests, and she begged the mercy of the church, virtually acknowledging, as it was interpreted, her delinquency ; and the decree was announced to her, that her crimes were to be expiated by burn-

ing—infamous, indeed, but not half so infamous, as the conduct of the faithless Charles, who made not the least effort to save her.

On the 24th of May, Joan was brought up to hear her sentence. It was known that her mind had been confused and confounded, and every means was adopted to render the scene imposing and terrific, in order to induce her publicly to acknowledge her errors. She was placed on a scaffold in the Cemetery of St. Ouen, and at a short distance stood a stake surrounded by faggots. The bishops and doctors sat in a gallery opposite to her; a Dominican friar mounted a pulpit to preach; and the executioner stood close by with his cart. The churchyard was crowded with French and English soldiers, and citizens of Rouen. The preacher dwelt with vehement oratory upon the damnable sin of heresy, hitherto so little known in France; and he expressed his horror and astonishment, that so Christian a people as the French should have followed the delusions of so infamous a woman. Joan listened in silence so long as the sermon turned upon her own character; but it was otherwise when the preacher attacked Charles, the man who called himself king. "Speak of me," said the noble-minded enthusiast, "but sully not the sacred name of the king! He is good and loyal—he is a Christian—the best in France."

"Make her hold her tongue!" cried the Bishop of Beauvais. The maid was silent, and the priest continued his discourse. In the end Joan submitted. A paper containing a renunciation of errors was then put into her hand, and not knowing how to write she signed it with a cross. Her punishment was

commuted into perpetual imprisonment and a penitentiary diet, or the bread and water of affliction; and after being made to thank the church for its mercy, Joan was reconducted to her dungeon, where she put on the dress of her sex, as she agreed to do, her male attire being considered as the worst feature of her heresy.

But when the solemn scene of the trial, and the horrid paraphernalia of the stake and execution were no longer present, and no bishops, doctors, or friars were near to puzzle and bewilder her, her mind instinctively reverted back to its old hallucinations. She still fancied that angels hovered round her, and again she heard their voices floating on the silence of the night. She examined her own heart, and felt that she was still unconvinced by the arguments of the church ; that she had merely yielded to force and terror. She recalled all her former glories. She longed again to have her boot in the stirrup, and her hand on the white banner ; to be once more fighting for the independence of her country. She meditated, in all probability, an escape ; and having been discovered one morning equipped in the dress of a soldier, it was considered as a proof that she was relapsed into heresy, and it was determined that she should die.

On the 30th of May, only seven days after her abjuration, she was put into the executioner's cart, and carried to the old market-place of Rouen, in the centre of which was a stake, and on the sides of which were scaffoldings and galleries, erected for the doctors, bishops, priests, captains, and other select spectators. At the sight of the stake, and of the faggots which they were heaping round it, she shuddered and wept;

but by degrees she recovered her self-possession, and said that she hoped to be that night in Paradise.

The cart halted under the wooden gallery, in which were seated the great Cardinal Beaufort and the French bishops. A monk delivered a short discourse, which reproached her with her backsliding, and which ended with these words, "*Go in peace, Joan; the Church can no longer defend thee!*" The poor maid then knelt and prayed aloud, fervently although in tears. Much as he hated heresy, and hard-hearted as he was supposed to be, the Cardinal Beaufort could not bear this lamentable spectacle. He rose from his seat, followed by several bishops, all shedding tears like himself. The more rancorous of the priests and her enemies then covered her with the infernal livery of the inquisition, and fixed on her head a black cap, which bore this inscription: "*HERETIC RELAPSED! APOSTATE! IDOLATER!*"

They then forced her to the centre of the square, tied her to the stake, and set fire to the faggots. As the smoke and flames rose round her, Joan was seen embracing a crucifix, and the last word she was heard to utter was the name of "Jesus." When the fire was burnt out, the attendants of the execution carefully collected the ashes, and threw them upon the placid surface of the Seine, which flowed close by.

Such is the story of Joan of Arc. It exhibits very powerfully the spirit of the age in which she lived; and proves that the religion of Christ, stifled and darkened as it was by wicked men, had not yet succeeded in either enlightening the understanding, or in affecting the heart.

## TIMOR BEC, OR TAMERLANE.



## CHAPTER I.

ANOTHER great conqueror of the Eastern world was Timor Bec, or Tamerlane, who was born during the troubles that desolated Persia in the year 1359. His father Tragai was one of those chieftains who had usurped a part of that empire upon the death of Abusaid, and Timor was desirous of preserving this usurped power; but his youth and apparent inex-

perience induced more talented men to oppose him.

To strengthen himself against the evils with which he was threatened by the chieftains of the powerful tribes by which he was surrounded, Timor formed an alliance with a neighbouring prince named Hussayn. At this time, Tekil, the governor of Kivah, was secretly mustering a powerful force against Timor; but having heard of the union of these two chieftains, he determined to subdue them by treachery, and under the proffer of friendship, invited both to his court under the pretence of establishing amicable relationship, and forming a lasting treaty with them.

Timor, therefore, and his friend Hussayn set off, attended only by a retinue of sixty horse, and accompanied by a few mules carrying presents. After they had arrived at the city, apartments were found them in the palace, and an early day was appointed for the exchange of civilities and the ratification of treaties.

But before this day should arrive, it was Tekil's determination to destroy those he now had in his power; accordingly, he surrounded the palace with his guards, and closing every avenue of escape with a chosen number of his officers, he entered that portion of the palace in which his prisoners were lodged. Timor, however, being equally wary with his treacherous enemy, had, with his friend Hussayn, found means to drop from a lofty window of their apartments into the courts below; and, when Tekil entered, he was surprised at finding nothing but the bare walls, upon one side of which was inscribed, with the point of a dagger:—

" Treacherous Prince, the point that thus marks thy infamy shall ere long mark thee."\*

A great uproar was now heard in the courts below, and, upon looking down, Tekil had the mortification to behold Timor and Hussayn mounted on horseback, cutting down the guards in every direction, and making for the Palace gates. In this adventure, Timor performed prodigies of valour ; and breaking through all opposition, and dealing death around him on all sides, succeeded in carving his way out of the palace, and in a few minutes both himself and his troop of horsemen were scouring the open plains of the adjacent country.

So soon as the treacherous Tekil could recover from his astonishment, he collected his forces, consisting of about one thousand horse, and commenced a most vigorous pursuit after the fugitives. Timor and his little troop pressed forward with vigour towards the territories of Ali Bey ; but observing in his flight that the horses and men of his pursuers seemed spent and jaded, while his own, more used to active service, were comparatively fresh, he commanded his men to face about and make a stand against the enemy.

Before the pursuers could form, Timor clapped spurs to his horse and dashed into their centre, accompanied by Hussayn and a few of his bravest officers. The fight was now hand to hand, and Timor and his companions soon reduced the enemy to less than half. Hussayn made directly for Tekil, but was surrounded, and would have been taken prisoner but for the bravery of Timor, who rushed to

\* History of Timor Bek, by Ahmed Ebre Arabshâh, the Syrian.

his rescue and drove away those who bore most furiously upon him. Thus relieved, and moving a little apart, Hussayn, although fainting with the loss of blood, drew forth his bow and directed his aim so well, that an arrow struck Tekil in the throat, at the same moment that Timor got within arm's length of him, and struck him dead with a blow of his dagger.

This circumstance immediately put a stop to further fighting, and the troops of Tekil retired homewards, while the small party of Timor, now reduced to seven men, continued their course across the desert; but as soon as they entered the territories of Ali Bey, a troop of three hundred horse surrounded them. At their approach, Hussayn, with four followers, fled and left Timor to do the best he could for himself. There was no alternative left the heroic prince but to submit, and he and his few followers were carried prisoners to Makhan.

Timor was for a time kept in close confinement, but at the end of two months, Ali Bey determined to send him away; and after taking from him all his jewels, dismissed him with one lean horse and an old camel. But the news of this inhospitable behaviour came to the ears of some of the surrounding chieftains, who felt great admiration for Timor's brave and noble qualities; and the Shah of Sanger went in quest of him with several fine horses and other necessaries, by which he was enabled to return privately to Great Bukharia. At Kandahar he received the further assistance of 1,000 horse; and in a few weeks other chieftains joined with him, and he found himself at the head of a very considerable body of men.

Hearing of his successes, Hussayn now brought a small force and joined his old friend ; and, notwithstanding the cowardice he had formerly exhibited, Timor received him with affection, and immediately gave him the command of a division of his new army. The Getes were now marching against Timor, and in a few days the forces met. Hussayn commanded the right wing and Timor the left ; but in consequence of the treachery of Hussayn, who secretly wished for Timor's defeat, the battle went against him. The second attack of Timor was foiled in the same way ; and when a third and final effort was made, Hussayn, who might have recovered the victory, fled.

Enraged at this conduct, Timor broke off his friendship with his false friend and refused to see him. After a while, however, their friendship was renewed by the craft and duplicity of Hussayn. Timor was now again successful ; but Hussayn, grasping at the sole power, suddenly separated from Timor and declared war against him, and endeavoured by all the arts of which he was capable, to draw away from Timor the chieftains over whom he ruled ; but instead of doing so, captivated by the noble bearing, strict justice, and generous behaviour of Timor, they determined upon investing him with supreme authority, and nearly all of them united in his favour, and brought together a large army in his support.

Meanwhile Hussayn set forward with a large army drawn from the old enemies of Timor ; but aiming still to over-reach his rival, sent another letter to him with the Koran, and protested, by the virtue of that book, that his intentions were sincere, and proposed a con-

ference at Shekichek, each to be accompanied with no more than one hundred men. Timor, looking at the Koran, observed, "When bad men take up the oracles of God they have new wickedness in their hearts," and, therefore, instead of only taking one hundred men, he took five hundred, four hundred of which he posted secretly in a wood, at some short distance from the place of conference. He then advanced with one hundred.

Hussayn, on his part, had a force of two thousand men in ambush to pounce upon Timor, and just as he advanced near to the place of rendezvous, a vast cloud of cavalry rushed down the mountains upon Timor. In a moment, however, his reserve troop appeared, and the whole vigorously attacking the treacherous force, kept them at bay, and Timor retired fighting, till he reached the main body of his army.

Hussayn now raised all the tribes against Timor, and entered Sebaz with a great army of Koronees. He sent 20,000 of his advanced guard to attack him in a dangerous pass. Timor had timely notice of this design, and having taken possession of some of the clefts and crannies of the rocks by a numerous band of archers, he marched his main body through the great gorge. In a short time the Koronees fell upon him, but a shower of arrows so surprised them, that they immediately fled towards the main-body, under Hussayn. Timor, still advancing, determined to attack him immediately; but before he reached his treacherous rival, a parley was demanded, and, although so frequently deceived, Timor, with more generosity than is common to great conquerors,

accepted the terms offered, and again received him into friendship.

But although Timor's friendship was all Hussayn's support, so base was this man's heart, that he could not refrain from plotting against his benefactor. He used all his remaining influence, both with Timor's friends and enemies, to do him injury. He also entered into a plot for the murder of Timor, and upon its discovery, was obliged to flee to his old partisans, whom he again roused against his master. Timor upon this advanced against him with his whole force. At Boya, within three leagues of the city of Samarcand, Timor met the holy seyd Bereke, the most considerable of the descendants of Mohammed, who presented him with a drum and a standard, which are the usual marks of sovereignty; and (as was usual in the East, the priest also uniting in himself the character of the prophet) poured forth one of those wild rhapsodies which seem to proceed from inspiration, and predicted the future grandeur of the conqueror.

Timor was entranced and delighted by this act of the priest, and in his moment of satisfaction, made a solemn vow that nothing should sever their holy friendship. He then, under a solemn ceremony, ordered, that after his death he should be buried in the same tomb with him, his face turned sideways, that at the day of judgment, when every one should hold up their hands to heaven to implore assistance from some intercessor, he might lay hold of the robes of this child of the prophet, and mount to heaven with him.

Hussayn had shut himself up at the city of Balh,

and to this place Timor proceeded with all his forces, augmented by those of several chieftains who hated Hussayn. The city was surrounded on every side, the besieged made several fruitless sallies, and Hussayn, who from the top of the walls of the city beheld the discomfiture of his troops, lost all his courage. Timor sent to acquaint him, that, if he desired his life, he must submit and deliver up the fortresses; and for once acting with prudence, he sent two of his sons offering to resign his crown to Timor upon receiving a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go on a pilgrimage to Mecca. "There is some treachery in his heart said Timor, "for the wretch talks of God;" but let him go, and may he be a better man."

Hussayn then requested another boon from Timor, namely, that no one should be permitted to hurt him on his departure. This request Timor also granted, and Hussayn sent word that he would depart on the morrow; but being a deceiver himself, and full of treachery, he hesitated to take the assurance of Timor, and stole out of the city the same night, deceiving Timor to the last. This deceit was, however, fatal to him, for after leaving the city and wandering about for some time, he arrived at the old city of Balh, some leagues distant, and not knowing where to conceal himself during the day, he mounted the minaret of the principal mosque and hid himself.

The Persian author observes, that this prince might have escaped, if the time fixed for his death by Providence had not arrived. By accident, a soldier of Timor, who had lost his horse on the plains surrounding this ruined place, went up the minaret, to take a glance over the country, in the hope of being able to

distinguish the lost animal ; he discovered Hussayn, who, in his prosperity had never the least generosity, but who now flung down a handful of pearls, and implored the man to assist him in his flight. But the soldier having faith to his master, immediately gave the alarm. Hussayn had but just time to descend the minaret, and running he knew not whither, crept into an old dilapidated tomb, but, still pursued by ill luck, the skirt of his garment betrayed him, and he was brought forth, and speedily conducted bound to Timor.

Timor beheld his fallen, treacherous friend and inveterate foe with a stern brow but a feeling heart. "Prince," he said, "thou hast broken all thy vows to me, deceived me, and injured me when I was seeking thy good. I will not imitate thy baseness and break my word. "Go," he continued, "I renounce the right I have of taking away thy life, and cancel the sentence of thy death, which thy untimely flight has justified. Then, turning to his surrounding emirs, he said, "I command you let him go in peace—if his conscience will let him have peace."

Hussayn hereupon departed, and passed safe to the plains beyond the city. But Olajai Hu, an emir of years and great experience, imagined that if so bad a man escaped, it might still endanger the peace of the empire, despatched two of his officers, who, mounting their horses, soon came up with the fugitive, and having again upbraided him with his dissimulation and treachery, slew him.

Timor now entered the city. Hussayn's sons and family were destroyed, all his wealth taken, and the citadel, as well as the palaces of Hussayn, were de-

stroyed and razed to their foundations, not, said the conqueror, so much in hatred of the city, but that there might not remain any tracings of a man so utterly worthless.

The ceremony of the coronation now took place, and Timor, or Tamerlane, as he was now called, was elected by the unanimous voice of all the emirs, princes, and nobles, assembled in the city to fill the imperial seat. At the ceremony of the coronation, Tamerlane ascended a splendid throne, raised in the midst of an extensive amphitheatre, capable of containing twenty thousand persons, and sparkling with brilliants and gems of rare lustre, so as to resemble a blaze of light; he placed a crown of gold on his own head, and girded himself with the imperial belt, in presence of all the princes of the blood, the numerous Tartar princes, the viceroys of various kingdoms, and tributary lords, who, kneeling before him in token of homage, wished him health, power, and prosperity. They also made him sumptuous offerings, sprinkled handfuls of gold and precious stones upon his head, and conferred on him the title of **EMPEROR OF THE AGE AND CONQUEROR OF THE WORLD.**

Thus was Timor left at the head of a vast empire, which he afterwards augmented by subsequent victories, that have placed him among the most illustrious conquerors, under the name of Tamerlane.



## CHAPTER II.

TAMERLANE now seems to have reached the summit of reasonable ambition ; but this passion, like many others, makes itself an appetite by what it feeds on ; and the conqueror, believing himself to be a great instrument in the hands of his Creator, thought the

whole world ought to own his power. He was accustomed to say, that as there is only one sun to enlighten the universe, so ought there to be but one king to hold sovereign sway and masterdom over mankind—and that he would be that one.

At the head of a vast army, composed of the soldiers of all the nations he had conquered, and attended by the princes and most valiant generals of the age, Timor burst forth like a meteor over the country of Korassan. Mounted upon an enormous elephant, and surrounded by both European and Asiatic warriors, the conqueror charged his enemies on every side, routed them in several battles, and subduing every town that came in his way by the mere terror of his name, he at last arrived at the chief city of Andekud. At this city dwelt the illustrious Tanlon Baba Senker, one of the Darwishes, who make a pretence of an inspired idiocy, and by means of an assumed union of imbecility and sagacity, astonish and awe the multitude, and are looked upon with great reverence. The Mahomedans have this extraordinary veneration for such persons, from the idea that God loved them before the creation, and on that account, did not render them capable of offending. The idiot, on beholding Timor, flung a breast of mutton at his head, who, so far from being offended, and willing, according to his natural sagacity, to inspire those around him with confidence, took this uncouth reception as a favourable augury, saying, "I am persuaded that God will grant me the conquest of Korassan, because it has always been called the breast of the habitable world." With the same

happy acuteness, it will be recollectcd, William the Conqueror replied, when he fell upon the earth at his landing on these shores. Those around him looked upon his fall as an unlucky omen ; but William, taking up handfuls of the earth, cried, "See, I have taken seizin of the country !" Great minds are seldom at a loss.

The people of Korassan were, however, not easily conquered, for they possessed not only an active war-like spirit, but a very learned and intelligent body of priests and nobles, which are, after all, the great strength of a nation. The forces of Timor were opposed with vigor, and were several times repulsed. Timor is reported to have said, "I am confident this nation must be mine, for it is of my spirit : we were made for each other, and I will make it my right arm. The best of horses are not easily broken ; the boldest stag is not easily taken. It is my ambition to be the monarch of lions, and not of hinds."

Korassan at length submitted, and the glory and power of Timor were increased in proportion to the difficulty of the conquest. His court became that of the supreme sovereign of nations ; he was surrounded by Emirs and Sheiks descended from Mahommed, men who were bred in a high degree of reverence, who devoted themselves to the study of the sciences, and professed the strictest principles of religion.

And now it was that the madness of ambition, and the assumption of divine power, made the conqueror forget that he was mortal, and caused him to lose sight of his humanity : that heart of flesh which keeps man from being a monster. And, fatally for

the world at this time, Timor lost his empress by death, and within a few days after, his eldest sister : both of these excellent women were as the temper to the naturally iron heart of the emperor. They were both remarkable for piety, and celebrated for building hospitals, mosques, colleges, and other public works, and were as angels sent to heal the cruel wounds made by the ruthless hand of war.

After the death of these excellent women, Timor seemed far less generous and merciful. Infamed by conquest at every step, he passed over Persia, Armenia, Georgia, Turkestan, Korassan, and the territory of the Kipjaks and the Surkmans, as a desolating scourge. At Ispahan he caused a massacre of all the inhabitants, except those who had saved some of the soldiers from death ; and to ensure the prompt execution of his mandates, each company were bound, under pain of the severest punishment, to furnish a stated number of heads, which the merciless conqueror employed in building towers in various parts of the city.

From Ispahan Timor carried his victorious arms into Russia, crossed the rivers Wolga, Yaik, and Oby, penetrated into the northern parts of Muscovy, and conducted his troops through regions where, for several months together, they beheld not the traces of any other human beings. Astracan, Moscow, Tobolsk, and other large and important cities, fell before his arms ; and what must ever tarnish his glory, the more valiantly he was opposed by those whom the great law of self-defence excited to withstand his progress, the more cruelly did he treat them, when the fortune of war threw them into his power.

Timor now advanced to Bagdad, to which he laid siege. When he had arrived at Ibrabim Lik, a place within about a hundred miles of it, he inquired of the inhabitants whether they had sent pigeons to give notice of the approach of his army. On being answered in the affirmative, he made them write another advice, importing that the dust which they perceived at a distance was caused by flying Turkomans, and that the army of himself was as a whirlwind that raiseth the sands of the desert. This notice was tied under the wings of a pigeon, and immediately dispatched to Bagdad.

Timor now drew near this celebrated city. The Sultan's army was encamped on nearly two leagues of ground. It was gathered from the remotest corners of the empire to arrest the progress of the conqueror; but so soon as they saw a cloud of horsemen in the distance, and noticed the simultaneous rush of the grand division of Timor's army, the Bagdadians were seized with a panic, fled, and were scattered like the leaves of the forest in a winter hurricane, while Timor entered Bagdad in triumph.

Not far from Bagdad, on the river Tigris, was Takret, a celebrated town, situated on a high and inaccessible rock. It was the strong-hold of a numerous band of robbers, consisting of several thousand, for many years the terror of the district, and so powerful as to defy the forces of the Sultan, who had several times attempted their extermination without success.

The rock upon which the town was built was situated near the river, which surrounded it on two sides; on the third, the rock was quite perpendicular, and

rose to the height of fifteen hundred feet ; on the fourth side, a strong and high wall was built, defended by towers and bastions, and only accessible by a small gate, through which only one person could enter at a time, and this was blockaded from within by immense masses of stone rolled behind it.

Timor advanced to the foot of the wall with seventy thousand of his troops, and declared that he would level the whole to the ground, and destroy all that it contained. The chieftain who commanded, Hassan Julek, struck with terror at Timor's name, instantly offered to submit. Timor, however, replied, "I make no terms with robbers ; I only destroy them."

He then began to undermine the whole of the walls, supporting them, as the work proceeded, by immense masses of timber, ranged like enormous ribs underneath. When the rock under the wall had been penetrated and hewn away, to the extent of sixteen feet horizontally, Timor ordered large fires to be kindled under the wooden props, and these being consumed nearly at the same time, the whole of the walls, and part of the town with them, fell down with a tremendous crash. The soldiers now rushed, sword in hand, over the ruins. The robbers, armed with spears, axes, and great bucklers, continued to defend themselves against the assailants, who advanced into the middle of the place, and massacred every one of them—not one remained. Timor then ordered the whole of the skulls of the dead robbers to be collected, and of these he formed two immense towers on the highest part of the rock, as a terror to others.

Success having attended the arms of Timor in every

direction, through the agency of his various generals; and distant countries, both to the east and west, having acknowledged him their lord, Timor set apart a great day of rejoicing and festivity, to celebrate these triumphs and the birth of a grandson. On this occasion, he ordered a splendid banquet to be prepared, with a magnificence surpassing even that common to the eastern world. The tents erected for this august repast covered two leagues of ground. That reserved for the entertainment of the principal princes, generals, khans, and governors, and in which Timor presided, was five hundred feet in length and two hundred broad, sustained by upwards of a hundred pillars, and surrounded with galleries, while the majestic area was left for the performance of various important ceremonies.

Every thing being prepared, and the whole regal enclosure filled to the very roof with the most powerful princes of his race, their wives and families, together with his numerous public officers, great captains, lords and ladies, Timor advanced from his head quarters about a league distant, seated upon an enormous white elephant, having above him a splendid canopy of pure gold, glittering with immense precious stones, and surmounted with a blazing crescent of the most brilliant diamonds. The elephant was also richly caparisoned, and his housetings were of rich crimson velvet, embroidered with gold. His head gem was that of a monarch, for he wore upon his forehead a sort of diadem, overshadowed with ostrich plumes. Before him marched a strong squadron of Tartar horse, in their most splendid habiliments, with their crimson saddles and cloths of gold, those who

rode in them being armed with the sword, and shield, and spear. To these followed a phalanx of active bowmen on foot, twelve deep, with their banners and horse-tails floating in the air, while the loud clang of the sturdy Tartar drum seemed to rouse every heart. After these came another splendid group of officers and captains, richly habited, bearing above a hundred banners taken from the various enemies of the emperor ; and immediately after them companies of black horses, carrying, under gorgeous canopies, various articles of costly spoil, the result of recent victories. Coffers of gold, utensils of silver, candelabra, vases, sacred jewels and vestments, royal armlets, the marks of supreme authority, and coronets of gold. Twelve heralds, with silver trumpets, came next, and at the regular distance of every twenty paces, the whole cavalcade stopped, while the heralds sounded their loud clang of triumph, and cried, " Make way for the Emperor of all the Earth."

A great crowd of horsemen followed the heralds, dressed in the richest robes. They were the highest khans and officers of the court. In the midst rode the principal emir, bearing the great sword of state, and around him clustered the various public functionaries, each bearing the insignia of his office; and followed by turbaned mufti, in white and green robes.

The sons, the nephews, and near relations of the emperor came next, armed to the teeth, and with drawn scimelters. They were mounted on milk white palfreys, with trappings of green, the sacred colour, and ornaments of pearls, cowries, and gold. These were flanked by eunuch slaves, and guarded by a

numerous body of gigantic "blacks," dressed in loose robes of the purest white, and long enormous crescent rings pendant from their costly and lofty turbans, covered with flowing tufts of white Cashmere hair ; and immediately following these, came the Emperor on his splendid white elephant. As he passed, the immense multitude congregated to witness the brilliant cavalcade, fell to the earth in prostrate reverence.

In this proud array of pomp, Timor came to the grand hall of ceremony, and everything being prepared, the emperor entered the place by the lower door, and proceeding through the midst of the glittering assembly, dressed in georgeous attire, with the royal crown on his head, the sceptre in his hand, the inaugural bracelet on his arm, while the whole multitude burst forth into the loudest acclamations. Advancing to the upper end of the apartment, he ascended by a flight of twelve steps, the throne which had been prepared for him, placed himself in a glittering chair of diamonds, whose coruscations were so intense, as to obscure his person in a blaze of light, which flashed on every side. The moment he was seated, a loud shout shook the building, which was caught up by the soldiers without, and repeated from rank to rank in so many echoes ; and now the trumpets brayed forth a loud acclaim, and the rough voices of the drums thrilled every heart with joy. Timor advanced in front of the steps of his throne, and holding up one hand, in token that he desired to be heard, he addressed the assembly after the following manner :—  
“ There is no God but God. !He is the light of the world, the fire of a brave man’s heart, the glory of

the just : to Him alone be praise, although he needs it not ; to him be glory and power for ever, who hath it evermore. Nations, people, children, I am, through the might and power which has been given me by God, your ruler, your king, your father. All that I have is yours—my strength is gathered for you—my glory your glory—I hold nothing for myself alone. I will support, I will sustain, I will defend you in the strength of God ; and the children that are born to me shall be your inheritance, and fight for you as I have done ; and shall give you the whole earth for a possession, and make you feared from the rising to the going down of the sun. Hear me, my children. I have done evil. To some men I have done wrong, for who is there that sinneth not ? I have often forgotten God who made me, and my days are passing away like fleeting clouds. The night comes swiftly; but while the sun of my heart shineth, let me be faithful. God is God—there is none other. His name it is mine to spread to the east, and to bring the infidel in with a strong hand and with a sharp sword. I am the sword of God, and I am drawn forth from the scabbard of my negligence, to avenge the cause of God upon the infidel. I will pass as a fiery star over China. I will go forth as a thunder-bolt, and destroy the temples and the idols, and all the foul things that breed there, and hunt the despisers of the prophet, even to the crannies of the rock. Muster yourselves for this great enterprise, follow me as the wild horses follow their chosen captain, and I will conduct you to victory and to glory, and give you the possession of other mighty empires, and the whole world shall declare that the kingdom of the prophet is God's."

The loudest uproar of applause followed this impassioned harangue (which is given at great length by Al Suter, the Persian historian) accompanied with the clang of trumpet and beat of drum. A thousand swords flew from their scabbards, and in an instant as many of the captains, officers, and soldiers as were within the tent, rushed towards the foot of the throne, and fell prostrate, in token of their readiness to follow Timor wherever he would lead them.

Music of a softer kind then arose, and the banquet was served up in the midst of the area, to a considerable number of the successful generals, whose triumphs this splendid fete was to celebrate. Twenty stewards, with golden rods, walked before the dishes as they were served up ; they were followed by cup-bearers, having in their hands crystal bottles and golden cups, with different kinds of wine and water of great purity. The multitude of beautiful ladies of the highest rank, which appeared on each side, in veils of brocade, spangled with diamonds, and whose braided hair reached the ground, gave an additional lustre to the assembly.

Dancing now took place, in a space immediately before the throne, and the most beautiful forms of Persia and Circassia were seen going to and fro, in the most fantastic forms, light as gossamers, floating on the wind, and beautiful as birds of Paradise that flutter in an eastern sunshine. When the dancing was over, a series of combats commenced, between young men of different tribes, first on foot, then on horseback, and Timor awarded to the victors the prizes for which they fought, making a suitable speech to each. The entertainment closed with

another oration of the Emperor, and the distribution of the most magnificent presents to the successful generals, and grants of territories of great extent. Timor then passed from his place of state, mounted his horse, and advanced to his army, which had congregated on the plain without, and having reviewed it, and distributed numerous prizes to the soldiery, he then returned to his more private dwelling-place.

Seventeen days followed, in which feasts and festivals were given by the family of Timor, to foreign princes and ambassadors, after which Timor advanced to Samarcand; here he took up his residence, and in a beautiful garden, north of that celebrated city, he built a magnificent palace. It had a pavilion at each corner, built of a resplendent malachite. The court was paved with marble, and the walls, both within and without, were covered with porcelain. All the doors were of inlaid tortoiseshell, and the cornices and mouldings of the apartments decorated with jewels. When the whole was finished, Timor held a royal festival, with sumptuous banquets, plays, and various diversions.

In the midst of the garden he built another palace. He called it the Garden that delighteth the Heart, and added to it the name of his favourite sultana. It was in the form of a square, and in the centre of each side was a door. The edifice consisted of three stories, erected on arches, the ceiling was ornamented with flowered mosaic work, and the walls with porcelain. Whatever could fascinate the eye was collected to embellish it, and beauty and splendour were united with elegance and convenience;

while a marble colonnade, composed of high pillars of malachite, with golden capitals, gave it an air of surpassing grandeur. The garden was laid out with the greatest symmetry into parterres for flowers and fruit trees; the alleys were planted with sycamores and beautiful palms, cypress, and various other large trees; and each of the four corners was adorned with a pavilion encrusted with beautiful porcelain, having steps leading to artificial lakes of considerable extent, upon which, reflecting all their gorgeous decorations in the placid surface, rode superb barges, for the accommodation of the court, while on every side numerous fountains were continually playing with scented water, which diffused an agreeable fragrance through the air.\*

\* Al-Karish, lib. vi.



### CHAPTER III.

TIMOR was not a man of pleasure, but of energy. He was soon tired of the empty forms of state and the glory of splendid entertainments, and his heart again panted for conquest and dominion.

The great empire of China was now coveted, and he determined to acquire the glory attached to the leader of a religious war, and represented to his followers that his expedition was for the honour and glory of the prophet, and his intention to sweep idolatry from the earth.

With this view, in the month of March, 1398, he took the field with a large army, composed of many nations, chiefly Tartars, and after passing the Jehan, encamped at Anderab. He defeated the Scapushes, a savage and gigantic race, inhabiting the mountains, and forced them to embrace Mahomedanism.

In September, Timor crossed the Indus, and when he arrived within two leagues of the great city of Delhi, he prepared for a pitched battle; and, as a

preliminary step, consulted the sage astrologers of his camp as to the most favourable moment for beginning the attack. The majority entreated him to delay it, on the grounds that the heavenly influences were unfavourable. Timor, however, on this occasion, instead of taking the opinions of the wise men for his guidance, boldly denounced their superstition, and told them that he defied the stars ; that the Governor of heaven and of earth, and the eternal Ruler of all things, had decreed to himself a sagacious mind, which enabled him to look into the aspects of things, and by reasoning upon them, taught him to know the best moment for his actions. " My mind is to me," he continued, " my counsellor. God rules my mind, and teaches me what to do, and if he teaches me the *what* he teaches me the *when*. And now my mind tells me to go forward, and that I shall conquer. Behold," said he, opening the koran,\* " what says it to me: ' Thou shalt go forth like a lion in the night, and seize thy prey in the darkness.' "

It was late in the day when this conference took place, and the Indian army, which lay in front, occupying a space of above six leagues, finding the day declining, supposed it was not Timor's intention to attack them till the following morning, and relaxed their vigilance ; but just as the sun was setting, this great conqueror sounded the charge, and the principal division of his army marched to the attack.

Timor's soldiers were appalled at the sight of the Indian elephants, which, fully armed, with high towers upon their backs, filled with bowmen, came against them in masses, making hideous noises. They

\* Al-Karrah.

imagined that neither the arrow nor the sword could penetrate their bodies ; that they were so strong as to overthrow trees, by only shaking the earth as they passed along ; that they could push down the firmest buildings ; and that in battle they could throw man and horse to a vast height in the air. This opinion prevailing in the camp, dispirited the troops, and disheartened even the boldest of Timor's captains. To dissipate these fears, Timor called to him two of his sons, and an adopted youth, named Augleb, together with fifty chosen men. He then leaped upon his own horse, and with these he charged boldly at the foremost elephant. Augleb made directly at the head of the animal ; but before his premeditated blow could take effect, the wary beast had transfixed the horse with his immense tusks, and trampled him under foot. Timor, however, wheeling his horse dexterously on one side, aimed a blow at the creature's trunk, and severed it in twain. Uttering a loud cry of anguish, it immediately turned back, and rushing in wild rage among the others of its breed, occasioned the greatest confusion and consternation. The soldiers of Timor seeing this, advanced more boldly, and attacked the astonished ranks ; and in a few minutes after, the whole of the advanced guard came on in one prodigious mass, breaking through all opposition. Elephants and horsemen, bowmen and heavy armed infantry, fled in pell mell confusion ; thousands fell, to be trampled to death by the flying elephants, and thousands more perished by the hands of the triumphant victors ; who, wearied with slaughter, fell down exhausted among the dead and the dying, and slumbered through the darkness. In the morning Timor advanced from the field of blood,

And his army were drawn up before the walls of Delhi.

This celebrated city was the capital of Hindoostan, and for many years was considered the chief and most beautiful city of the whole of India ; it contained, at the time of Timor's irruption, two millions of inhabitants, and its revenue was nearly five millions sterling. The imperial palace, which was considered the wonder of the world, enclosed a space of three miles in circuit, filled with magnificent buildings. One of these was a most magnificent edifice, enriched with white marble and gold, and supported upon arcades, handsomely formed, after the Indian fashion. It was open on three sides ; while on the fourth was placed the balcony, on which the Emperor presided daily for several hours. The balcony was exquisitely carved, and the back parts and canopy were adorned in the most costly manner. The whole was divided into compartments, each of which contained the figure of a bird, a beast, a flower, or fruit ; and, by means of precious stones of various colours, inlaid in the solid marble, every tint and shade was true to the life,—not an error in a leaf, the bloom of a plum, the down of a peach, or the brilliant polish of the dark grape, could be detected by the most observant eye ; even the more various and delicate tints of every flower, the spots upon their decayed leaves, all were expressed with the greatest possible nicety, by a fragment of stone of a corresponding shade.

Upon particular occasions, a gorgeous pavillion of crimson silk was spread out in the place, which was lined with yellow damask silk, and its ornaments

were of solid silver ; rich carpets covered the ground, and at night it was illuminated by a thousand coloured lamps, on silver vessels, burning perfumed oil. It was beneath that canopy the Emperor received the various ambassadors from foreign courts.

The spacious court below the balcony was bounded by a terrace of pure white marble, the front wall of which was divided into compartments of golden mouldings, and ornamented with graceful figures and flowers of the same description. From the centre of this court rose a quadrangular edifice of the same materials, consisting of a double row of arcades, of the most exquisite architecture, the outer of which formed a verandah to the other, and all supporting a lofty roof. From the four corners of this roof sprung light and elegant turrets, of the same materials, each composed of four pillars, covered by a gilded dome.

Such was the exterior of this hall, but the interior was more beautiful. The ceilings were formed of solid silver, divided by rich golden mouldings into compartments, all exquisitely carved and chased ; and every column of both arcades, as well as the wall above each arch, was divided tastefully into separate panels, cut into the stone, which were marked by mouldings of solid gold, and filled with flowers of the same material. The lower columns were infinitely more beautiful and more tastefully executed. Here not only the richest colours, but the most costly materials attracted the eye : the finest cornelians, jaspers, agates, onyxes, bloodstones, and even turquoises, lent their beauty, and were united in this superb decoration.

The chief depository of the wealth of the empire

was termed the Toished Khamed, and contained the chief treasures of the kingdom. These consisted of piles of gold and of silver plate ; the furniture for elephants and horses, consisting of superb velvets and gold, glittering with gems ; mighty howdahs, covered with plates of massive gold, enamelled with precious stones into gorgeous flowers ; canopies, shields of silver, caskets of jewels, countless multitudes of native gems, the gathered accumulation of ages, from the richest mines of the East. But the most valuable part of this immense treasure was the celebrated peacock throne, which was one dazzling mass of gold and of precious stones, raised upon six golden feet, and disposed in forms that emulated in colour and brilliancy the plumes of that bird, from which it was named, and so arranged, that the feathers formed a canopy, beneath which the emperor sat. Such is but a slight outline of this city, which, for extent, beauty, and magnificence, eclipsed all others of the East.

On the 4th of January, 1399, Timor erected his standard on the walls of Delhi, and the principal inhabitants came to make submission and sue for mercy. Even the elephants and rhinoceroses are said to have fallen down before the Emperor in an humble posture, and to have uttered extraordinary cries, as if they demanded quarter. On the thirteenth, the army of Timor entered this great and magnificent city, and when the conqueror beheld the luxury and the wealth with which it abounded, he feared the enervating effect that such an elysium might have upon those hardy soldiers who had made him the conqueror of the world, and he issued his mandate for

its destruction, and gave it up to plunder. The dreadful work of pillage soon commenced, and the spoil in precious stones, jewels, plate, and manufactures, was prodigious ; for the Indian women and girls were adorned with valuable trinkets, and had bracelets and rings on their hands, feet, and toes, so that the soldiers were loaded with them. The city was then set on fire, and utterly razed to the ground. The few inhabitants that remained were made slaves. The different artificers were distributed among the princes and commanders, but the masons were all reserved for the Emperor, in order to build him a spacious mosque at Samarcand, which was of such dimensions as to contain all the faithful in that great city.

Immediately after the war in India, Timor turned his arms against Georgia. His troops laid waste all before them, and the terrified inhabitants who escaped the sword, fled with their effects and provisions to the high mountains, where they had fortified caverns and houses built upon craggy rocks. But Timor, ever active, ordered his soldiers to ascend to the tops of the mountains, and the most brave among them were let down by cords to the mouths of the caverns, and made a terrible havoc of the fugitives ; thus the whole country was reduced, the temples and monasteries razed to the ground, and chapels and mosques erected in their room. Timor then reduced all the strong places in Syria, and marched against the Farruj, Sultan of Egypt, who was encamped with a large army at Damascus.

The sultan of Egypt, who was likewise sovereign of Syria, fearing the usual success of Timor, determined to employ other means than those of open warfare for

the destruction of his opponent. He therefore sent a well-known desperado, in the character of ambassador, with several attendants, who had orders to murder Timor during the audience ; and for this purpose they were provided with poisoned daggers. When Timor approached Damascus, these men were admitted to his court ; but the Emperor, by his penetrating mind, discovered the principal assassin upon his first presentation. He ordered him to be searched, and the whole plot was immediately discovered. Timor ordered both him and two of his associates to be immediately dispatched with the daggers prepared for himself, and the others having been deprived of their noses and ears, were sent with a letter to the sultan of Egypt.

The next day Timor marched his army towards the city, in order of battle, with his Indian elephants at its head, that he might strike terror into the inhabitants. The city was soon surrounded, and Farruj, accompanied by the principal officers of his court, fled from the city. The inhabitants then opened the gates, but the citadel was still held by a strong body of Egyptian troops. The soldiers having raised their platforms high enough to command the outer walls, the battering rams and engines began to play, while the miners sapped the foundations, in defiance of the great stones and wild-fire thrown on them by the besieged. At last the famous tower of Tooma fell, the soldiers rushed in among the tottering ruins, and committed terrible havoc among the Egyptian soldiers.

The Tartar army clamoured still for plunder and the destruction of Damascus, and on the 28th of March, 1401, they broke into the city, and made a

terrible massacre of the inhabitants, and seized the whole of their effects. The riches were so immense, that the beasts they had taken, not being sufficient to carry them off, they were obliged to cast away the inferior articles, which were in themselves of great value. The city was then set on fire, and as most of the ceilings, as well as the upper stories, were varnished, the whole was speedily reduced to a heap of ruins.

Timor then advanced to Bagdad. He caused a bridge of boats to be laid across the Tigress, and blocked up all the passes with his troops. On the 28th of July, the army advanced furiously against it, and by means of numerous scaling ladders, took it by assault in a few hours. The inhabitants in their flight threw themselves into the Tigress, and were shot by the soldiers as they endeavoured to pass to the opposite shore. Farruj endeavoured to escape in this manner with his daughter, but being closely pursued, he threw both himself and her into the river, in which they were drowned.

The victorious arms of Timor were now turned against Bajazet, emperor of the Turks, who was his great eastern rival, and both parties prepared for battle. Bajazet had as his allies many Indian princes, and his camp occupied more than ten miles in circumference, being entrenched to that extent. In the midst of this enormous entrenchment, arose the imperial pavilions, comprising in themselves a superb city of canvass, glittering with crimson and gold, around them fluttered hundreds of flags and streamers. Before the centre pavilion, on lofty poles, floated the sacred banners of green, bearing in their folds the

silver crescent ; others too, of silver and azure flung their broad folds to the sunshine ; and there, too, were borne aloft, the golden fish, the favourite emblem of Indian royalty, with devices too numerous to be particularly distinguished. A wide and lofty wall of crimson shrouded all that passed within. Around the imperial quarters, and scattered on the various divisions of the camp, towered the snow-white tents of his thousand amrahs, the tent of each marked by its own ensign. Thousands of splendidly caparisoned horses neighed from the surrounding plains, and these, and numerous other objects, formed a scene of Eastern magnificence and Moslem power scarcely to be described. Timor is said to have looked upon this splendour with a sigh ; but with his usual alacrity, commenced an attack upon his opponent two hours before day, and ere the sun was up had achieved another victory. The mighty Bajazet was taken prisoner, and the whole of this gorgeous spoil fell into the hands of the conqueror.

Timor behaved with noble generosity to Bajazet, for they had many traits of character in common. Before, however, the victor could reinstate Bajazet in his power, which it was his intention to do, the Turkish emperor was suddenly carried off by a fever. Timor bewailed his death with many tears, and presented his son with a royal vest, a great quantity of gold, and other articles, and gave him his liberty. He then buried Bajazet with the greatest pomp.

The invasion of China still occupied the whole of this great man's attention, and calling together his council, he addressed them in a speech in every way remarkable. "Until now," said he, "my ambition has been to make conquests, and to extend the limits of

my vast empire ; but something is in my heart, that tells man is capable of greater things than even the subjugation of mighty empires. The great empire of peace and happiness, which is but an extension of the kingdom of God himself, ought to be the territory of all my people. But the sword cannot conquer this kingdom. It does not come in the strength of armed hosts, nor on the wings of victory, nor out of the terror of the battle. I am old—my hairs are grey—but God is in my heart, and lifts it upward as my body sinks towards the dust. God is just and merciful, full of goodness, of truth. I would be the shadow of God, the reflection of his brightness. Let me open the courts of justice to every man, and bestow security and peace to all true Mussulmans, in the glory of the faith, that I may have peace at the last. The oppressed shall not at the day of judgment demand vengeance against me, nor shall the supplications of widows hang upon my robe when I mount to paradise. My wishes and intentions are, that the world should be governed in equity, and repose in peace ; that I may not have the cry of blood upon my shroud. All human grandeur is a fleeting cloud—all the glory of kingdoms is vanity—all treasure is dust and ashes. But the grandeur of virtue, the glory of peace, and the treasure of happiness can be sustained for ever. Let me sustain it while I live. Let me lay the strong foundations of it on the wide earth that I have subdued, that when I go hence, my footsteps may leave a fragrance and a light behind.\* This was surely an extraordinary harangue from one who had spent a long life in usurp-

\* Al-Karish.

ing dominions, dethroning princes, extending and multiplying scenes of misery and devastation, and destroying the human race with savage barbarity. But it teaches us that the voice of God will make itself heard, if even it be at the latest hour.

Having set about reforming all the abuses which had crept into his government, and making signal retribution upon various offenders, who had illegally collected the revenue and imposed taxes on the people without due authority, he announced his intentions to make a new war upon China. "I am resolved," he said to those around him, "to expiate my past crimes by performing some good action, acceptable to God. I will, therefore, lead my troops against the infidels, and exterminate the idolators of China. I know that in the wars I have carried on, much blood has been shed, and many of the faithful have been destroyed, and it is proper that the same soldiers who aided me in committing my faults, should become the instruments of my penitence. Hence, then, let them prepare to march to China, that they may acquire the merit of this holy war, by demolishing the temples of idols, and erecting mosques in their places."

Timor now prepared to lead his army, consisting of twelve hundred thousand men, through dreary deserts, or already desolated countries. The cold was so excessive on their departure, that the troops passed the largest rivers on ice. They could not procure water without digging to the depth of several feet. Multitudes had their limbs frozen, and numbers, both of men and horses, perished on the march; but no obstacle could daunt the spirit of the victorious Timor, his presence animated every heart.

But when he reached the frontiers of China, the finger of God arrested him, as if a voice had said, "Thus far shalt thou go and no further, and here shall thy proud course be stayed." He was suddenly seized with a fever which threatened his life, and he seemed to have a melancholy presentiment of an approaching dissolution. He thought he heard a voice calling him to repent, for he must soon appear before God. Obedient to the solemn admonition, he set about the great work of repentance, and resolved to endeavour to make satisfaction for his numerous faults, by doing justice to all.

At last this great conqueror perceived death was approaching, and he ordered dust to be sprinkled on his head, in token that he was ready for the grave. He then summoned his family and nobles round his bed. He saw them bathed in tears, and addressed them in a low but firm tone. "Do not weep for me," he said, "for tears have no virtue in them—prayers have. Pray for me, my children; for I go to appear before the great judge who will weigh me in the balance of his righteousness, and much will be wanting in me. My sins are numerous, but God is merciful! If I have pulled down the strong and mighty of the earth, and desolated empires, I have at all times protected the weak against the strong, and brought good out of evil. I go hence, but you remain; and I call on you to be courageous and bold, and remember, that unless you labour for the happiness of my people, a curse will light upon you, which in the hour of death will weigh down the soul in darkness, and hurl it to the pit of perdition."

He then raised himself as well as he could, and taking from beneath his pillow the imperial circlet,

of gold, which he kept ever near him, called upon his grandson, Mehemed Jehan Gher, to kneel before him; and, placing the crown upon his head, called upon those present to acknowledge him as his successor. He then called for the koran, and obliged all present to swear fealty and devotion to him.

He then placed the koran in the hands of one of the learned doctors who stood beside him, and told him to read certain passages, which he appears to have marked many years before, to comfort him in his last moments. They expressed rewards to the faithful, and held out hopes of heaven to those who had spread the religion of Mahomet. In the evening he continued to repeat incessantly, and without any intermission, and at last almost mechanically, unequivocal professions of his faith; and expired while he was emphatically repeating a favourite article of his creed, "There is no other God than God!"

Such was the end of one of the most extraordinary of men, who, had it not been for his wanton destruction of human life, might have ranked with the greatest of them. As a conqueror he was the first of his age, and his power, wealth, and magnificence were beyond description. Numerous monuments of his grandeur are still remaining, in the cities, towns, castles, and walls which he built; in the rivers and canals which he dug; and in the bridges, gardens, palaces, hospitals, mosques and monasteries which he erected in different parts of Asia.

In his person, Timor was corpulent and tall; had a broad forehead, an agreeable countenance, and a fair complexion; he wore a large beard; was very strong. He had broad shoulders, his fingers were thick, and

he had long legs. His constitution was amazingly vigorous, but he was maimed in one hand, and lame of the left side. His eyes appeared full of fire, his voice was loud and piercing, he feared nothing; and at his death, though upwards of seventy years old, his understanding was sound and perfect, his body vigorous and robust, his mind constant and as unshaken as a rock.

Timor was a foe to dissimulation, and would not endure a lie. He despised cunning and subterfuge, and spoke and acted the truth at all times. Those whom he proved to be sincere were the first in his councils. The device which he had chosen for his seal was, "I am sincere and plain." But on the other hand, ambition had extinguished his humanity; war had familiarized him to blood; and his religious zeal had inspired him with a cruel fanaticism.

One most remarkable trait in his character was, his conviction of his own insufficiency, and his constant dependance upon God. He on all occasions represented himself as weak in himself, but strong in the Almighty power. Let us emulate his virtues; and, in contemplating his character, believe that he was an instrument in the divine hand for the fulfilment of mighty designs in God's moral government of the world—which, although we now see through a glass darkly, we shall some day see face to face.

**WILLIAM TELL,  
THE DELIVERER OF SWITZERLAND.**

“—— There is no cause,  
 For which the mailed hand and glittering steel  
 Are raised in stern effrontery to heaven,  
 And the tremendous shoutings of armed hosts  
 Shake earth’s firm centre, save the cause  
 Of Liberty, can justify vain man.  
 But she baptizes the mailed brow with glory,  
 And sanctifies the naked sword, though steeped  
 Up to its hilt in blood, and gives to war  
 A holiness and virtue.”—**MARTIN.**



In the year 1289 Albert succeeded his father Rodolphe as Emperor of Austria, and Lord of Switzerland; and no sooner did the sceptre devolve upon him, than he determined to govern the Helvetians with absolute sway. He refused to ratify the promises made to them by his father, and resolved to erect their whole territory into a principality for one of his sons. He at first attempted to bargain with three of the cantons, who had formed a bond of union, for the surrender of their independence; but finding them inflexible in their resolutions to be

free, he determined to obtain his object by force, and, as Duke of Austria, subject the brave Switzers to a state of vassalage.

Having, therefore, marched a considerable force into the territory he wished to subjugate, so as to render resistance ineffectual, he commissioned a number of his officers to demand of the cantons instant submission as his vassals. The Swiss burghers and the Austrian delegates met at the grand hall at Altorf; and the former, in reply to the insolent demands of Albert, pointing to a roll of charters, which embodied their rights and privileges for many ages, replied :— “These are our wealth, our sacred patrimony, which we inherit from our fathers, of which we are to render an account to our children, and they to succeeding generations. We are neither slaves nor subjects to any particular prince ; we are citizens of the empire, and members of that august body which recognises the Emperor as its head. It is to that head we are united. Homage paid to any other would be baseness, and we should be unworthy of the freedom we have enjoyed so long, were we to give up the rights and privileges of our country, or renounce those prerogatives, which are as dear to us as our honour, and far dearer than our lives.”

This noble answer inflamed Albert with rage, he immediately made choice of, and sent to the cantons, three nobles, as bailiffs or governors, who were notorious for their depravity, and infamous by the corruption of their morals. The names of these men were Gessler, Landenburg, and Wolfenchesse. He assigned to each of them their residence in very

strong castles, provided with numerous possessions, situated in the respective cantons, which they were directed to subdue and bend, by all sorts of means, to the will of the ambitious Albert.

Gessler was appointed governor of the canton of Uri, and of all the bailiffs was the most arbitrary and tyrannical; and he scrupled not to commit the most severe acts of oppression. Besides the allowance of the utmost license to his soldiers, the tolls were raised, the most slight and trivial offences punished by imprisonment and heavy fines, and the inhabitants every where treated with insolence and contempt. On one occasion, Gessler, passing on horseback before a house built by Staufacher, in the village of Steinen, near Schwytz, cried,—“What! shall it be borne that these contemptible peasants should build such an edifice? If they are to be thus lodged, how ought not we to be?” He then commanded the inmates to be turned out, and ordered that it should be the post of one of his officers, and stationed on it a military guard.

A parallel instance of tyranny occurred in the conduct of the young Lord of Wolfenchesse, in Unterwalden. He had entered the house of Conrad of Baumgorton, at Alzallen, and finding no one present but the lady of the mansion and her female servants, conducted himself with infamous rudeness. He then, in the most peremptory terms, ordered the ill-treated lady to prepare him a bath. While in the act of doing so, Conrad arrived, and having speedily learned the indignities to which his wife had been exposed, drew his sword, and rushing into the bath-room, sacrificed the young noble on the spot.

Such acts of tyranny, frequently repeated, soon roused the spirits of those men to the most deadly resistance. Foremost among these was WILLIAM TELL, who was born at Bürglen, a secluded hamlet in the canton of Uri, near the lake of Lucerne, about the year 1275; and like his forefathers, was the proprietor of a cottage, a few fields, a vineyard, and an orchard. He was endowed by nature with a bold and energetic mind, and was distinguished by great physical strength and manly beauty; and added to this, his skill in the archery of the cross-bow was celebrated all over the canton. Tell was married, and had an only son, equally bold and noble minded as himself.

Tell foresaw, on the arrival of Gessler, many of the misfortunes which must follow this iron rule, and soon associated himself with two other patriots, who were willing as he was to sacrifice their lives for the good of their country. These were Werner de Stauffacher of Schwytz, Walther Furst of Uri, and Arnold de Melchthal of Unterwalden, who were concerting measures for the deliverance of their country from the yoke of Austria. Of these, Arnold was the more intimate associate of Tell.

One evening, as William Tell and his wife sat in their cottage, watching their son, now about ten years old, amusing himself with his bow, the father of his friend Arnold, an old man, nearly eighty years of age, appeared, led by a peasant, and feeling his way with a stick. Tell and his wife hastened forward, and, to their inconceivable horror, discovered that their friend was blind, his eyes having been put out with hot irons. The hero of Bürglen called upon

the old man to explain this fearful sight ; and the old man, having been led to a seat, soon satisfied his impatient curiosity.

It appeared that old Melchthal, his son, and granddaughter, were in the fields, loading a couple of oxen with produce for the market-town, when an Austrian soldier presented himself, and having examined the animals, which appeared to suit his fancy, ordered the owner to unyoke the beasts, that he might drive them away. Adding insolence to tyranny, he further remarked, that such clodpoles might very well draw their own ploughs and carts. Arnold, the old man's son, and Tell's friend, was so enraged at this insolence, that he aimed a blow at the soldier, and broke two of his fingers. The enraged soldier then retreated ; but old Melchthal, who well knew the character of Gessler, immediately forced Arnold, much against his inclination, to flee, and endeavour to conceal himself among the mountains. But he had scarcely departed, when a detachment of guards surrounded the old man's dwelling, and dragged him before Gessler.

The haughty governor, enraged at the attack upon the soldier, peremptorily called upon Melchthal to give up his son. The old man as haughtily refused, and Gessler replied, "If you will not let my eyes behold the villain, yours never shall," and immediately gave orders that his eyes should be burnt out with a hot iron, which cruel mandate was immediately executed, and the poor victim of tyranny was dismissed, dark and blind.

Tell heard the story of Melchthal in silence, but with a heart bursting with a desire of vengeance.

When he had finished, he inquired the exact place of his son's concealment. The father replied that he was in a particular cavern of Mount Rhigi, the desert rocks of which place were unknown to the emissaries of the governor, and there he had promised to remain till he had received the permission of his parents to issue forth. This Tell requested might be granted immediately, and turning to his son, ordered him to start at once to Rhigi with a message to Arnold. Walter gladly obeyed, and providing himself with food, and receiving particular instruction from his father, went on his journey under cover of the night.

Tell himself then threw around his own person a cloak of wolf-skin, seized his quiver full of sharp arrows, and taking his terrible bow, which few could bend, in hand, bade adieu to his wife for a few days, and took his departure in an opposite direction from that pursued by his son. It was quite dawn when Walter reached the Rhigi, and a slight column of blue smoke speedily directed him to the spot where Arnold lay concealed. The intrusion at first startled the fugitive; but recognising Tell's son, he listened eagerly to his dismal story, the conclusion of which roused in him so much fury, that he would have rushed forth at once to assassinate Gessler, had not Walter restrained him. Schooled by Tell, he informed him that his father was engaged in preparing vengeance for the tyrant's crime, being at that moment with Werner Stauffacher concerting proper measures of resistance. "Go," said my father, "and tell Arnold of this new villany of the governor's, and say that it is not rage which can give us just revenge, but the utmost exertion of courage and

prudence. I leave for Schwytz to bid Werner arm his canton ; let Melchthal go to Stantz, and prepare the young men of Unterwalden for the outbreak ; having done this, let him meet me, with Furst and Werner, in the field of Grutli.\*

Arnold, scarcely taking time slightly to refresh himself with food, sent Walter on his homeward journey, while he started for Stantz. Walter, when alone, turned his steps towards Altorf, where unfortunately, and unknown to himself, he came into the presence of Gessler, to whom he uttered somewhat hard things about the state of the country, being led to commit himself by the artful questions of the tyrant, who immediately ordered the lad into confinement, with strict injunctions to his guards to seize whomsoever should claim him.

Meanwhile certain doubts and fears, from he knew not what cause, arose in the mind of Gessler, and struck him with a presentiment that all was not right. He imagined that the people wore in their looks less abject submission to his authority ; and the better to satisfy himself of the correctness or erroneousness of this view, he commanded Berenger to erect at dawn of day, in the market-place of Altorf, a pole, on the point of which he was to place the ducal cap of Austria. An order was further promulgated, to the effect that every one passing near or within sight of it should make obeisance, in proof of his homage and fealty to the duke.

\* A lonely sequestered strip of meadow, called indifferently Rutili and Grutli, upon an angle of the lake of Lucerne, surrounded by thickets, at the foot of the rock of Seelisberg, and opposite the village of Brunnen.

Numerous soldiers under arms were directed to surround the place, to keep the avenues, and compel the passers-by to bend with proper respect to the emblem of the governing power of the three cantons. Gessler likewise determined, that whoever should disobey the mandate, and pass the ducal badge without the requisite sign of honour, or who should exhibit by his bearing a feeling of independence, should be accused of disaffection, and be treated accordingly—a measure which promised both to discover the discontented, and furnish a sufficient ground for their punishment. Numerous detachments of troops, among whom money had been previously distributed, were then placed around to see that his commands were scrupulously obeyed. History scarcely records another instance of tyranny so galling and humiliating to the oppressed, and so insolent on the part of its author.

The proceedings of Tell in the interval were of deepest concern to the country. Having arrived within the territory of Schwytz, and at the village of Steinen, he called at the house of Werner, and being admitted, threw at his feet a heavy bundle of lances, arrows, cross-bows, and swords. "Werner Stauffacher," cried Tell, "the time is come for action;" and without a moment's delay, he informed his friend of all that had passed, dwelling minutely on every detail; and when he had at length finished, the cautious Werner could restrain his wrath no longer, but exclaimed, clasping the hero's hand, "Friend, let us begin; I am ready." After further brief conference, they, by separate ways, carried round arms to their friends in the town and the neighbouring

villages. Many hours were thus consumed, and when the whole were at last distributed, they both returned to Stauffacher's house, snatched some slight refreshment, and then sped on their way to Grutli, accompanied by ten of their most tried adherents.

The lake of Lucerne was soon reached, and a boat procured. Werner, perceiving the water to be agitated by a furious tempest, inquired of Tell if his skill would enable him to struggle against the storm. "Arnold awaits us," cried William, "and the fate of our country depends on this interview." With these words he leaped into the boat, Werner jumped after him, and the rest followed. Tell cast loose the agitated vessel, seized the tiller, and hoisting sail, the little craft flew along the waves.

Presently, it is said, the wind moderated, and ere they reached the opposite side, had ceased altogether—a phenomenon common in these mountain lakes. The boat was now made fast, and the conspirators hastened to the field of Grutli, where, at the mouth of a cavern of the same name, Arnold and Walter Furst awaited them, each with ten other companions. Tell allowed no consideration of natural feeling to silence the calls of duty, but at once came to the point. He first gave a brief sketch of the state of country under the Austrian bailiffs, and having shown to the satisfaction of his companions the necessity for immediate and combined action, is related to have added—"We may have our plans frustrated by delay, and the time has come for action. I ask only a few days for preparation. Unterwalden and Schwytz are armed. Three hundred and fifty warriors are, I am assured, ready. I leave you to assign them

a secluded valley as a place of rendezvous, which they may gain in small parties by different paths. I will return to Uri, and collect my contingent of a hundred men; Furst will aid me, and seek them in the Moderan and Urseren, even in the high hills whence flow the Aar, the Tessin, the Rhine, and the Rhone. I will remain in Altorf, and as soon as I receive tidings from Furst, will fire a huge pile of wood near my house. At this signal let all march to the rendezvous, and, when united, pour down upon Altorf, where I will then strive to rouse the people."

This plan of the campaign was, after some deliberation, agreed to, and it was further resolved unanimously, that, in the enterprise upon which they were now embarked, no one should be guided by his own private opinion, nor ever forsake his friends; that they should jointly live or jointly die in defence of their common cause; that each should, in his own vicinity, promote the object in view, trusting that the whole nation would one day have cause to bless their friendly union; that the Count of Hapsburg should be deprived of none of his lands, vassals, or prerogatives; that the blood of his servants and bailiffs should not be split; but that the freedom which they had inherited from their fathers they were, determined to assert, and to hand down to their children, untainted and undiminished. Then Stauffacher, Furst, and Melchthal, and the other conspirators, stepped forward, and raising their hands, swore that they would die in defence of that freedom.

After this solemn oath, and after an agreement that New-Year's Day should be chosen for the outbreak, unless, in the meantime, a signal fire should

arouse the inhabitants on some sudden emergency, the heroes separated. Arnold returned to Stantz, Werner to Schwytz, while Tell and Furst took their way to Altorf. The sun already shone brightly as Tell entered the town, and he at once advanced into the public place, where the first object which caught his eye was a handsome cap, embroidered with gold, stuck upon the end of a long pole. Soldiers walked around it in respectful silence, and the people of Altorf, as they passed, bowed their heads profoundly to the symbol of power.

Tell was much surprised at this new and strange manifestation of servility, and leaning on his crossbow, gazed contemptuously both on the people and the soldiers. Berenger, captain of the guard, at length observed this man, who alone, amid a cringing populace, carried his head erect. He went to him, and fiercely asked why he neglected to pay obedience to the orders of Hermann Gessler. Tell mildly replied that he was not aware of them, neither could he have thought that the intoxication of power could carry a man so far; though the cowardice of the people almost justified his conduct. This bold language somewhat surprised Berenger, who ordered Tell to be disarmed, and then, surrounded by guards, he was carried before the governor.

"Wherefore," demanded the incensed bailiff, "hast thou disobeyed my orders, and failed in thy respect to the emperor? Why hast thou dared to pass before the sacred badge of thy sovereign without the evidence of homage required of thee?"

"Verily," answered Tell with mock humility, "how this happened I know not; 'tis an accident, and no

mark of contempt; suffer me, therefore, in thy clemency, to depart."

Gessler was both surprised and irritated at this reply, feeling assured that there was something beneath the tranquil and bitter smile of the prisoner which he could not fathom. Suddenly he was struck by the resemblance which existed between him and the boy Walter, whom he had met the previous day, and immediately ordered him to be brought forward. Gessler now inquired the prisoner's name, which he no sooner heard than he knew him to be the archer so much respected throughout the whole canton, and at once conceived the mode of punishment which he afterwards put in practice, and which was perhaps the most refined act of torture which man ever imagined. As soon as the youth arrived, the governor turned to Tell, and told him that he had heard of his extraordinary dexterity, and was accordingly determined to put it to the proof. "While beholding justice done, the people of Altorf shall also admire thy skill. Thy son shall be placed a hundred yards distant, with an apple on his head. If thou hast the good fortune to bear away the apple in triumph with one of thy arrows, I pardon both, and restore your liberty. If thou refusest this trial, thy son shall die before thine eyes."

Tell, horror-stricken, implored Gessler to spare him so cruel an experiment, though his son Walter encouraged his father to trust to his usual good fortune; and finding the governor inexorable, our hero accepted the trial. He was immediately conducted into the public place, where the required distance was measured by Berenger, a double row of soldiers

shutting up three sides of the square. The people, awe-stricken and trembling, pressed behind. Walter stood with his back to a linden-tree, patiently awaiting the exciting moment. Hermann Gessler, some distance behind, watched every motion. His cross-bow and one bolt were handed to Tell ; he tried the point, broke the weapon, and demanded his quiver. It was brought to him, and emptied at his feet. William stooped down, and taking a long time to choose one, managed to hide a second in his girdle ; the other he held in his hand, and proceeded to string his bow, while Berenger cleared away the remaining arrows.

After hesitating a long time—his whole soul beaming in his face, his paternal affection rendering him almost powerless—he at length roused himself, drew the bow—aimed—shot—and the apple, struck to the core, was carried away by the arrow !

The market-place of Altorf was filled by loud cries of admiration. Walter flew to embrace his father, who, overcome by the excess of his emotions, fell insensible to the ground, thus exposing the second arrow to view. Gessler stood over him, awaiting his recovery, which speedily taking place, Tell rose and turned away from the governor with horror, who, however, scarcely yet believing his senses, thus addressed him :—"Incomparable archer, I will keep my promise ; but," added he, "tell me, what needed you with that second arrow which you have, I see, secreted in your girdle ? One was surely enough." Tell replied, with some slight evidence of embarrassment, "That it was customary among the bowmen of Uri to have always one arrow in reserve ;" an explanation which only served to confirm the suspicions of

Gessler. "Nay, nay," said he ; "tell me thy real motive, and whatever it may have been, speak frankly, and thy life is spared." "The second shaft," replied Tell, "was to pierce thy heart, tyrant, if I had chanced to harm my son." At these words the terrified governor retired behind his guards, revoked his promise of pardon, commanding him further to be placed in irons, and to be reconducted to the fort. He was obeyed, and as slight murmurs rose amongst the people, double patrols of Austrian soldiers paraded the streets, and forced the citizens to retire to their houses. Walter, released, fled to join Arnold of Melchthal, according to a whispered order from his father.

Gessler, reflecting on the aspect of the people, and fearful that some plot was in progress, which his accidental shortness of provisions rendered more unfortunate, determined to rid his citadel of the object which might induce an attack. With these views he summoned Berenger, and addressed him in these words : "I am about to quit Altorf, and you shall command during my absence. I leave my brave soldiers, who will readily obey your voice ; and, soon returning with supplies and reinforcements, we will crush this vile people, and punish them for their insolent murmurings. Prepare me a large boat, in which thirty men, picked from my guard, may depart with me. As soon as night draws in, you can load this audacious Tell with chains, and send him on board. I will myself take him where he may expiate his offences."

Tell was forthwith immediately conducted to Fluelen, the little port of Altorf, about a league distant, at the foot of Mount Rorstock. Gessler followed,

and entered the bark which had been prepared with the utmost dispatch, ordering the bow and quiver of the famous archer to be carefully put on board at the same time ; with the intention, it is supposed, of either keeping them under safe custody, or hanging them up, according to religious custom, as an offering for his personal safety. Having started with the prisoner, under the safe conduct of his armed dependants, Gessler ordered them to row as far as Brunnen, a distance of three leagues and a half ; intending, it is said, to land at that point, and passing through the territory of Schwytz, lodge the redoubted Bowman in the dungeon of Kussnacht, there to undergo the rigour of his sentence.

The evening was fine and promising ; the boat danced along the placid waters. The air was pure, the waves tranquil, the stars shone brightly in the sky. A light southern breeze aided the efforts of the oarsmen, and tempered the rigour of the cold, which night in that season rendered almost insupportable so near the glaciers. All appeared in Gessler's favour. The extent of the first section of the lake was soon passed, and the boat headed for Brunnen. Tell, meantime, loaded with irons, gazed with eager eye, shaded by melancholy, on the desert rocks of Grutli, where, the day before, he had planned with his friends the deliverance of his country. While painful thoughts crossed his mind, his looks were attracted to the neighbourhood of Altorf by a dim light which burst forth near his own house. Presently this light increased, and before long a tremendous blaze arose visible all over Uri. The heart of the prisoner beat

joyously within him, for he felt that efforts were making to rescue him. Gessler and his satellites observed the flame, which in reality was a signal fire to rouse the cantons; upon which, however, the Austrians gazed with indifference, supposing it some Swiss peasant's house accidentally on fire.

Suddenly, however, between Fluelen and Sissigen, when in deep water, intermingled with shoals, the south wind ceased to blow, and one of those storms which are common on the lake commenced. A north wind, occasionally shifting to the westward, burst upon them. The wind, which usually marked the approach of a dangerous tempest, raised the waves to a great height, bore them one against another, and dashed them over the gunwale of the boat, which, giving way to the fury of the storm, turned and returned, and despite the efforts of the oarsmen, who were further damped by an unskilful pilot being at the helm, flew towards the shore, that, rocky and precipitous, menaced their lives: the wind, also, brought frost, snow, and clouds, which, obscuring the heavens, spread darkness over the water, and covered the hands and faces of the rowers with sharp icicles. The soldiers, pale and horror-stricken, prayed for life; while Gessler, but ill prepared for death, was profuse in his offers of money and other rewards if they would rouse themselves to save him.

In this emergency the Austrian bailiff was reminded by one of his attendants that the prisoner Tell was no less skilful in the management of a boat than in the exercise of the bow. "And see, my lord," said one of the men, representing to Gessler the imminent

peril they were all incurring—"all, even the pilot, are paralysed with terror, and he is totally unfit to manage the helm. Why then not avail thyself, in desperate circumstances, of one who, though a prisoner, is robust, well-skilled in such stormy scenes, and who even now appears calm and collected?" Gessler's fear of Tell induced him at first to hesitate; but the prayers of the soldiers becoming pressing, he addressed the prisoner, and told him that if he thought himself capable of promoting the general safety, he should be forthwith unbound. Tell, having replied that by the grace of God he could still save them, was instantly freed from his shackles, and placed at the helm, when the boat, answering to a master's hand, kept its course steadily through the bellowing surge, as if conscious of the free spirit which had now taken the command.

Guiding the obedient tiller at his will, Tell pointed the head of the boat in the direction whence they came, which he knew to be the only safe course, and encouraging and cheering the rowers, made rapid and steady progress through the water. The darkness which now wrapped them round prevented Gessler from discovering that he had turned his back on his destination. Tell continued on his way nearly the whole night, the dying light of the signal-fire on the mountain serving as a beacon in enabling him to approach the shores of Schwytz, and to avoid the shoals.

Between Sissigen and Fluelen are two mountains; the greater and the lesser Achsenberg, whose sides, hemming in and rising perpendicularly from the bed

of the lake, offered not a single platform where human foot could stand. When near this place, dawn broke in the eastern sky, and Gessler, the danger appearing to decrease, scowled upon William Tell in sullen silence. As the prow of the vessel was driven inland, Tell perceived a solitary table rock, and called to the rowers to redouble their efforts till they should have passed the precipice ahead, observing, with ominous truth, that it was the most dangerous point on the whole lake.

The soldiers here recognized their position, and pointed it out to Gessler, who, with angry voice, demanded of Tell what he meant by taking them back to Altorf. William, without answering him, turned the helm hard a-port, which brought the boat suddenly close upon the rock, seized his faithful bow, and with an effort which sent the unguided craft back into the lake, sprang lightly on shore, scaled the rocks, and took the direction of Schwytz.

Having thus escaped the clutches of the governor, he made for the heights which border the main road between Art and Kussnacht, and, choosing a small hollow in the road, hid himself under cover of the brush, intending to remain in ambush until such time as the bailiff should pass that way. It appears that the governor had the utmost difficulty to save himself and his attendants after this sudden disappearance of their pilot, but at length succeeded in effecting a safe landing at Brunnen. Here they provided themselves with horses, and proceeding in the direction above alluded to, advanced towards Kussnacht. In the spot still known as "the hollow way,"

and marked by a chapel, Tell overheard the threats pronounced against himself should he be once more caught, and, in default of his apprehension, vengeance was vowed against his family. Tell felt that the safety of himself and his wife and children, to say nothing of the duty he owed his country, required the tyrant's death. He instantly, therefore, showed himself, and, seizing an opportune moment, pierced Gessler to the heart with one of his arrows.

This bold deed accomplished, the excited hero, effecting his escape, made the best of his way to Art, and thence soon gained the village of Steinen, where he found Werner Stauffacher preparing to march. The news, however, which Tell brought, removed the necessity for further immediate action, and prompt measures were taken to arrest the progress of their allies. A joy, which deeply proved the wrongs of the people, spread over the whole land, and though they delayed to strike the blow for universal freedom from the Austrian yoke, the final decision of the conspirators was only the greater.

On the morning of New-Year's Day, 1308, the castle of Rossberg, in Obwalden, was adroitly taken possession of, and its keeper, Berenger of Landenberg, made prisoner, and compelled to promise that he never again would set foot within the territory of the three cantons; after which he was allowed to retire to Lucerne. Stauffacher, during the earlier hours of the same morning, at the head of the men of Schwytz, marched towards the lake Lowerz, and destroyed the fortress of Schwanau; while Tell and the men of Uri took possession of Altorf. On the following Sunday the deputies of Uri, Schwytz, and Unterwalden met,

and renewed that fraternal league which has endured even unto this day.

In 1315, Leopold, second son of Albert, determined to punish the confederate cantons for their revolt, and accordingly marched against them at the head of a considerable army, accompanied by a numerous retinue of nobles. Count Otho of Strassberg, one of his ablest generals, crossed the Brunig with a body of four thousand men, intending to attack Upper Underwalden. The bailiffs of Willisau, of Wollhausen, and of Lucerne, meantime armed a fourth of that number to make a descent on the lower division of the same canton; while the emperor in person, at the head of his army of reserve, poured down from Egerson on Morgarten, in the country of Schwytz, ostentatiously displaying an extensive supply of rope wherewith to hang the chiefs of the rebels—a hasty reckoning of victory, which reminds us of similar conduct and similar results when Wallace repulsed the invaders of Scotland.

The confederates, in whose ranks were William Tell and Furst, in order to oppose this formidable invasion, occupied a position in the mountains bordering on the convent of our Lady of the Hermita. Four hundred men of Uri, and three hundred of Underwalden, had effected a junction with the warriors of Schwytz, who formed the principal numerical force of this little army. Fifty men, banished from this latter canton, offered themselves to combat beneath their native banner, intending to efface, by their valour and conduct, the remembrance of their past faults. Early on the morning of the 15th of November, 1315, some thousands of well-armed Aus-

frian knights slowly ascended the hill on which the Swiss were posted, with the hope of dislodging them; the latter, however, advanced to meet their enemies, uttering the most terrific cries. The band of banished men, having precipitated huge stones and fragments of rocks from the hill-sides, and from over-hanging cliffs, rushed from behind the sheltering influence of a thick fog, and threw the advancing host into confusion. The Austrians immediately broke their ranks, and presently a complete rout, with terrible slaughter, ensued. The confederates marched boldly on, cheered by the voice and example of Henry of Ospenthal, and of the sons of old Redding of Biberegg.

The flower of the Austrian chivalry perished on the field of Morgarten, beneath the halberts, arrows, and iron-headed clubs of the shepherds. Leopold himself, though he succeeded in gaining the shattered remnant of his forces, had a narrow escape; while the Swiss, animated by victory, hastened to Unterwalden, where they defeated a body of Lucernois and Austrians. In this instance Count Otho had as narrow an escape as the emperor. After these two well-fought fields, the confederates hastened to renew their ancient alliance, which was solemnly sworn to in an assembly held at Brunnen on the 8th day of December.

All that remains to be told of the Swiss hero's life is the immemorial tradition, that William Tell, the same who shot Gessler in 1307, assisted at a general meeting of the commune of Uri, in 1337, and perished in 1350, by an inundation which destroyed the village of Bürglen, his birthplace. According to Klin-

genberg's chronicle, however, written towards the close of the fourteenth century, when many of his contemporaries were still living, Wilhelmus Tellus of Uri, as he calls him, the liberator of his country, became, after the battle of Morgarten, administrator of the affairs of the church of Beringer, where he died, in 1354.

**TOMMASO ANIELLO, THE FISHERMAN OF  
NAPLES.**

*“When bad men rule,  
Resistance is a virtue.” — CAMPBELL.*



ONE of the most extraordinary instances in history of a successful attempt upon the part of the populace to resent tyrannical power occurred at Naples, in the year 1649.

Tommaso Aniello, commonly called Massaniello, who eventually became the great leader of this revolt, was the son of a fisherman of Amalfi, where he was born, about the year 1624. At the time of his birth the kingdom of Naples was under the dominion of the house of Austria, and was governed by a viceroy.

The inhabitants of Naples were not, at this period, by any means disaffected towards their governors, and had hitherto paid cheerfully the various taxes that had been imposed upon them; but in the year 1646, a new tax was put upon fruit, which being the principal food of, at least, four-fifths of the population of Naples, it occasioned a sudden spirit of resistance;

and remonstrances, petitions, and applications, were made to the viceroy to rescind the obnoxious imposition. The viceroy, however, being strengthened, as he supposed, by the more influential members of the community, ventured to resist the opinions of the multitude, and a popular revolt immediately broke forth with a fury utterly uncontrollable.

At this time Massaniello was twenty-four years of age, of a person handsome, and in stature tall and commanding. His countenance had a mild and placid rather than a bold and enterprising character. His dress consisted of linen trowsers, and waistcoat, generally blue, with a scarlet cap of worsted. His legs and feet were bare, and his whole air was that of a young man possessing an ardent and bold heart, devoid of the ferocity so common to the leaders of a mob.

Massaniello was returning home in the evening with a very small "catch" of fish over his shoulder, and much out of humour with his day's labour. In such a mood of mind he met with an old playmate, one Perrone, who had on some former occasion been with Massaniello in one of those half waggish, half mischievous scrapes so common to young men in all countries. Perrone had improved upon his early enterprises, and had become a bandit from choice, and continued a bandit from necessity. Massaniello exchanged with him the customary salutations, and with a waggish laugh said, "If I was a man like Perrone, and had learned the art of working in a body, I would right this lopsided city, and set it on its legs again."

"You would do great things, no doubt," replied

Perrone, "while you were in the mood, but as soon as you had supped and felt comfortable with yourself, you would suffer Naples, and the taxgatherers, and the tax eaters, and the tax payers, to settle their affairs for themselves."

Massaniello then swore loudly by the Virgin and crossed himself devoutly; and declared to those present that if he could find only two or three more determined like himself he would go to work lustily, and that in three days no beard should wag against them in Venice." His hearers laughed, but still applauded him. "Join me," said he, his enthusiasm increasing with the applause bestowed upon him. "Swear like me in good and hearty faith, and hold to me your hands, and we will go together; thousands will follow us, and strong must be the barrier that would turn us back."

"Agreed," said several of the bystanders; but at this moment, some of the officers of the city laid hands on Massaniello's basket, and reminded him that he had not paid his tax for fish, and that he was one of those who wanted to live without taxes.

"I am," said the now excited young man; "and cursed be he through a hundred generations who ever pays a tax on flesh or fruit, or any other commodity, inflicted upon us by tyrants who roll in luxury, while we die of hunger and fatigue!" The populace still applauded, and followed Massaniello to his house, from the window of which he gave them a parting harangue, expressive of his being ready at any time to take up their cause, and make Naples a free city.

The day of the festival of the Carmelites was usually celebrated in the middle of July; and a part

of the festivities consist of a sham fight, in which one band of young men, to the amount of several hundreds, represent Turks, and a similar number are considered in the character of Christians. The Turks had to defend a wooden castle which was supposed to be attacked by the Christians. Massaniello succeeded in getting himself appointed captain of one of their parties, and Perrone was installed captain of the other; and thus for several days previous to the fête they had many opportunities of reviewing and training their followers, who were armed with sticks and canes; and not a few were let into the secret of their being trained to use them against their oppressors should an occasion present itself.

But there was no need to wait for the festival of the Carmelites, for a circumstance occurred which tempted the disaffected to break out into rebellion at once, and without any preconcerted plan; for on the 7th of July, a disturbance happened in the market place between the tax-gatherers and some gardeners of Pozzaolo who had brought some figs into the city, respecting who should pay the duty, the buyer or the seller. After the tumult had continued for some hours, and while the dispute was at its height, Massaniello suddenly appeared, and with a loud voice called upon the multitude to hear him,—“Fools and slaves,” said he, “to altercate and tear each other to pieces, to determine that which ought to be determined in a far different manner. Why should any pay this abominable tax? Is it not levelled at your very lives—does it not strike at the very roots of your sustenance—and is it not an impious affront to nature and to God, who gives the

fruits of the earth to all who will labour to gather them ? Cease your idle clamours ; and if you are for fighting, as I suppose you are, fight against those who enforce the tax with a hard hand and harder hearts. Down with the tax-gatherers ! down with the wretches who would grind you into dust, that you may enjoy the fruits of your labours like men, and not creep half famished to your graves !" This appeal, so boldly and suddenly delivered, at first startled the wondering populace, who after a few moments' pause responded with loud shouts, and by the manner in which they threw forth their arms, and flourished their rude weapons, seemed to indicate their resolution to obey the suggestions of the young fisherman ; and another patriotic appeal from his lips induced a simultaneous rush of the mob towards the office, built in the market for the reception of the duty. In a few moments the doors were broken in—the money scattered in all directions —the officers beaten and dispersed, and the office itself began to send up flames which gave warning to the remotest part of the city that an insurrection had commenced.

Thousands now flocked to Massaniello, and with one voice he was appointed leader of the insurgents. His first orders were to set fire to all the other tax offices in the city, and separate parties speedily organised themselves, and departed in various directions to execute them. These speedily returned to the market place and were as quickly marshalled by their leader, and marched directly to the palace of the viceroy, who, alarmed for his own personal safety, instead of heading his guards, and trying to restore

order, escaped from the palace by a back egress, while its gates and courts were immediately thronged by the multitude, and every room speedily ransacked.

In the meantime the viceroy was making his way towards the Castle del Ovo ; but being overtaken by the rioters he was seized and threatened with immediate death, being at the same time roughly handled, and pulled by the hair and whiskers. However, by throwing some handfuls of gold among them he again escaped and took refuge in a convent of Minims, where he was soon after found by the Archbishop of Naples and several nobles.

To this place Massaniello and his followers now repaired, and with loud shouts of intimidation demanded an immediate conference with the assembled rulers. The large hall of the convent was immediately thrown open, and at the upper end, highly raised, sat the affrighted viceroy, Cardinal Filomarino, and several high personages both of the clerical and lay professions.

The young fisherman, covered with blood and dust, and blackened with smoke and ashes, waved his hand for his followers to fall back, and walked boldly into the middle of the hall with his sword drawn. As he approached the conclave, he assured them that all danger was at an end the moment the unjust tax was abrogated—that in token of peace he would sheath his sword, and promise obedience in the name of his followers.

The viceroy, eager in his desire to seize upon the favourable moment, hastily drew up an ordinance by which he abolished all taxes on provisions, and pardon to all offending during the insurrection. To secure

the good faith of Massaniello he also proposed to him the receipt of an annual pension of two thousand four hundred crowns. This the patriot immediately rejected, declaring that if the viceroy would keep his word, he would find them obedient servants.

It was now expected that the tumult would cease ; but this is not the only instance that history affords of the ease with which a storm can be raised, and the difficulty of quelling it,—for when Massaniello returned to the market place with a view to restore order, he found his old associate the bandit Perrone, with Gennino, and many other robbers and malcontents who were bent on plunder, and who loudly clamoured for the destruction of the houses of all those concerned in the raising of the tax. To resist this demand was impossible, and a reluctant order was given to the mob to proceed to this act of retribution, as it was designated. For several days, therefore, the city was given up to tumult and uproar : fires were blazing in every direction ; the most costly mansions were levelled to the ground ; the most superb furniture, pictures and sculptures were thrown about in confusion or trampled under foot ; while plate, jewels, coins and valuables were carried off by those who waded through fire and blood and falling ruins to obtain them.

Massaniello was now "Lord of Naples," and with his associates master of the whole city. His extraordinary success induced many high families, whose fortunes were desperate, to join with him in his future proceedings, and to wring from the timid viceroy new concessions, particularly the abolition of such laws as were supposed to circumscribe the native

nobility. Another “conference” was therefore demanded, to settle the future rights and privileges of the city and citizens ; to abolish all unnecessary taxes ; and especially to give up the deed or charter of exemption, which, at a former period, had been granted to the citizens, and violated by his successors, and which gave the making of all laws, and the imposition of all taxes, into the hands of the citizens.

The Viceroy, taken again by surprise, knew scarcely how to act. On the one hand he seemed personally in danger, the city in jeopardy, and the lives and properties of the nobility and clergy at hazard ; on the other hand he had no power in himself to grant the demand of the multitude. It was impossible to gain time to consult the emperor by any postponement, as the whole populace were at his palace gates ; and, therefore, to appease the insurrection, he drew up a false deed in letters of gold, and sent it to the leaders of the rebels, by their favourite, the Duke of Matalone. But some of the secret enemies of the viceroy’s council exposed the fraud, and the Duke was pulled from his horse, ill-treated by the mob, and at last committed as a prisoner to the custody of Perrone.

Massaniello, in the meantime, tattered and half naked, commanded his followers, who were now well armed, and reckoned about a hundred thousand men, with a most absolute sway. He directed all his energies to the accomplishment of what he considered the freedom of his native city. He ate and slept little, gave his orders with great precision and judgment, appeared full of humility and moderation, and was evidently far from interested views, or personal ambition.

But Massaniello had unfortunately linked himself with the vile and the abandoned. The bandit Perrone was already jealous of his extraordinary popularity, and hated him for his moderation, and the increasing respect he obtained from the friends of order and of peace. He, therefore, gave the Duke of Matalone his liberty upon receiving a bribe, and united in a conspiracy with him against his old friend Massaniello, and against the viceroy, both of whom were to be destroyed ; and Joseph, the brother of Matalone, was to be placed at the head of affairs.

Desirous of restoring order, and cementing together the new order of things as quickly as possible, Massaniello was busily employed in negotiating a general peace and accommodation, and the convent of the Carmelites was again chosen for the discussion and regulation of future proceedings, and the promulgation of such laws as would give satisfaction to the people. Having full confidence in their leader, the followers of Massaniello had contented themselves with waiting patiently for the result, and a great number had departed to their homes to take refreshment and rest, while the remainder, enfeebled by fatigue, were but thinly scattered round the place of conference.

Taking advantage of this circumstance, Perrone suddenly summoned his banditti ; which being joined by a number of hired followers of the duke, amounting altogether to above three hundred, they suddenly surrounded the convent, put those who resisted to death, burst open the gates, and penetrating to the place in which the conference was going on, fired a volley through the windows at Massaniello,

the viceroy, and the others who had assembled together. Massaniello immediately retired by a door at the back of the platform on which he had been elevated, and quickly passing through some private avenues got into a narrow court in the rear of the convent, leading to his stables. Here, mounting a horse, he with incredible quickness spread the alarm to his friends, and in a short time was surrounded by the armed multitude, who made a furious attack upon the banditti, slew a hundred and sixty of them, and having discovered Matalone and Perrone, beheaded them in the market-place as traitors.

By this conspiracy Massaniello was rendered more suspicious and severe, and being influenced by those around him who secretly hated him, he began to abuse his power, by putting several persons to death upon slight pretences ; and to force the viceroy to an accommodation he cut off all communication with his castles, which were unprovided with provisions and ammunition. The viceroy, likewise, being afraid lest the French should take advantage of the commotion, earnestly desired to agree to a treaty, which was accordingly concluded on the fifth day of the insurrection, by the mediation of the archbishop. By this treaty it was stipulated, that all duties imposed since the time of Charles the Fifth should be abolished, and that the writ of exemption granted by that emperor should be delivered to the people ; that for the future no new taxes should be imposed ; that the vote of the respectable part of the community should be equal to the votes of the nobility ; that an act of oblivion should be granted to all that had assed ; and that the people should continue in arms

under Massaniello, till the ratification of the treaty by the king.

By this treaty no less than eight thousand people who fattened upon the blood of the public were ruined. The people, when it was solemnly published, manifested extreme joy, believing they had now recovered all their ancient rights and privileges. Massaniello, at the desire of the viceroy, went to the palace to visit him, accompanied by the archbishop, who was obliged to threaten him with excommunication, before he would consent to lay aside his rags, and assume a magnificent dress. He was received by the duke with the greatest demonstrations of respect and friendship, while the duchess entertained his wife, and presented her with a robe of cloth of silver, and some jewels.

The viceroy now, to preserve some shadow of his own authority, appointed Massaniello to the office of captain-general of the forces of the city, and invested him with the insignia of office, and a gold chain of inestimable value, which, with difficulty, he was prevailed upon to accept. The next day he received a further commission, which gave him power to establish a sort of martial law for the punishment of all outrage and violence; and he began to exercise all the functions of sovereign authority. Having caused a scaffold and several gibbets to be erected in one of the streets, he pronounced sentence on all those who had been found disturbing the public peace, or committing public or private crimes, and ordered the guilty to be immediately put to death. This course had the effect to restore perfect order in the city, and to extinguish the insurrection.

The grandeur and prosperity of Massaniello were, however, but of short duration ; for on the fourth day of exercise of his judicial functions, he was seized with violent pains in the head, and a trembling of the lower extremities, and was at last both distracted and delirious ; yet still holding sufficient power over himself as to remain at his post. But the nature of his distemper was soon apparent by his unaccountable and extravagant actions.

He continually raved about assassinations and murder ; feared every sound ; and would give sudden orders for the seizure and execution of some of his best friends. But still the multitude clung to him as their deliverer, and clustered round him in a body, whichever way he moved ; and, among the mass of vile characters that are inevitably mixed up with public commotions, there were many who took his "madness for a warrant," and, under the shadow of his name, committed the vilest atrocities. At last his disease took a more furious turn, and some of the first men in Naples would have fallen victims to his insane suspicions of plots against his person. In this state he was, indeed, not only a pitiable, but a dangerous object, and the viceroy at length gave orders for his assassination ; and a band of hired braves, backed by a multitude of the dregs of the populace, rushed upon him in the midst of one of his most furious harangues, and stabbed him to the heart.

The mob then struck off his head, which they fixed upon a pole, and carried about the city as in triumph, while his body suffered every indignity, and was thrown into the common receptacle of filth, well

known in Naples. But a few days afterwards, upon the weight of bread being lessened, they began to regret the death of Massaniello ; and having taken up his body, they carried the corpse in solemn procession through the various quarters of the city, and afterward buried it with all the ceremonies of a royal funeral.

Massaniello had many great qualities and exhibited great vigour and presence of mind, but the more subtle niceties of political government were beyond his mental powers ; and had his life been preserved, it is probable he might have perished in a dungeon or on a scaffold.

Such is the history of one of the most extraordinary revolutions upon record. It commenced from causes apparently trifling, and swept away all the usual authority and power of a state like a hurricane—like a hurricane, it soon subsided, leaving behind it only traces of its desolation.

Such is generally, if not always, the fate of all popular commotions commencing with the lower classes. Perhaps, history does not record one single instance of a newly created and consolidated power arising from the mass of the people. Their case is always hopeless, unless they are confederated more or less with the aristocracy, and with that superior intelligence which wealth, means, and leisure so abundantly bestow.

It frequently happens that public commotions lead to the exercise of greater tyranny on the part of rulers, who find in their fears strong pleas for rivetting the chains of a nation still firmer ; and we need not look far for examples.

We are happy in being denizens of a country in which riot and rebellion is almost impossible, and where liberty is protected by the strong powers of a political constitution, which has been and still is the envy of surrounding nations.

## CAPTURE OF ROME BY ALARIC.



AFTER the death of Valentinian, in the year his son Gratian took upon him the imperial dignity, soon after becoming master of the whole empire by the death of Theodosius, who was joined with him in power; this event gave the finishing stroke to the Roman affairs, for his son Honorius, to whom he left the western empire, was possessed of no abilities whatever.

The Goths were now headed by an experienced commander, the celebrated King Alaric, who would have proved formidable even in better times of the empire. He first overran Greece, which he accomplished without opposition, through the treachery of the governor, who commanded the troops that defended the pass of Thermopylæ, to retire at the approach of the enemy. Athens, Corinth, Argos, Sparta yielded without resistance, and the whole country was ravaged and destroyed by the barbarians.

At last Alaric was opposed by Stilicho a Roman general, a man of great valour and experience in war. The Goths were then defeated with great loss, and

afterwards besieged in their camp, but, through mistake or neglect in the Roman commander, were suffered to escape, and make themselves masters of the province of Epirus.

Not long after this Alaric invaded Italy itself. The emperor, struck with terror, would have abandoned the country and fled into Gaul, but this disgraceful and pernicious measure was opposed by Stilicho. The Goths were besieged at Pollentia, and obliged to come to a decisive battle and compelled to retreat. Their camp was invested, their entrenchments forced with great slaughter, the wife of Alaric was taken, with all the wealth which had been amassed in plundering Greece, while many thousands of Roman prisoners were released from the most deplorable slavery.

Italy being now happily delivered, Honorius entered Rome in triumph, having Stilicho with him in the same chariot. But soon after the Goths made head again, and the emperor was obliged to leave Rome and retire to Ravenna, in order to secure himself from the barbarians, who now broke in upon the empire on all sides. Such multitudes now made their appearance that it is difficult to account for their sudden emigration. A host under Rhodogast, styled by some the King of the Goths, marched from the northern extremity of Germany, almost to the gates of Rome, and left the remains of his army to achieve the destruction of the west. Twelve thousand warriors, distinguished above the vulgar either by their birth or their noble deeds, glittered in the van, and the whole multitude, which was not less than two hundred thousand fighting men, might be increased by the

accession of women, children, and slaves, to the number of four hundred thousand persons.

This formidable emigration issued from the same coast of the Baltic which had poured forth the myriads of the Cimbri and Teutones, to assault Rome and Italy in the vigour of the republic. The safety of Rome was entrusted to Stilicho; but Rhodogast and Alaric passed without resistance the Alps, the Po, and the Appenines, leaving on one hand the inaccessible palace of Honorius, buried amid the marshes of Ravenna; and on the other, the camp of Stilicho, who had fixed his head quarters at Pavia. Many cities were pillaged and destroyed, and the senate and people of Rome trembled at the approach of this mighty host.

Alaric was a Christian and a soldier, the leader of a disciplined army; the savage Radagaisus was a stranger to the manners, to the religion, and even the language of the civilised inhabitants of the south. The fierceness of his temper was exasperated by cruel superstitions, and it was believed that he had bound himself by a solemn vow to reduce the city to a heap of stones and ashes, and to sacrifice the most illustrious of the Roman senators on the altars of those gods who were appeased with human blood.

Stilicho advanced against the army of Radagaisus, who was besieging Florence, and adopting Cæsar's plan of circumvallation, entrenched with a deep ditch and lofty wall the whole army of the besiegers. This laborious work was completed in an incredibly short space of time by the soldiers and labourers of Tuscany, who were compelled to the work by the Roman cohorts. The imprisoned multitude of horses and men were thus gradually destroyed by famine: but the

Romans were exposed during the progress of such an extensive work, to the frequent attacks of an impatient enemy. At last, however, the whole barbaric force was obliged to submit ; Radagaisus was taken and beheaded ; the famished Germans who escaped the famine and the fury of the Romans, were sold as slaves, and Stilicho received, the second time, the glorious title of Deliverer of Italy.

In the mean time, Alaric, with his Goths, threatened a new invasion, unless he was paid a certain sum of money. Stilicho is said to have occasioned this demand, and to have insisted on sending him the money he demanded ; this appears to have been the cause of his disgrace and death. The money was fairly owing to Alaric, and Stilicho, with a noble sense of justice, ordered its payment, but the corrupt ministers of Honorius resisted the demand, accused Stilicho of treason, and he was sacrificed ; while the minions of the court instigated the soldiers to murder the wives and children of those Goths whom Stilicho had taken into the service of Honorius. The enraged husbands went to Alaric, who in consequence, urged more vehemently his demands ; still being refused, he ordered his army to march, and with bold and rapid movements he passed the Alps and the Po, pillaging all the cities in his course, and increased his force by thirty thousand auxiliaries. His troops, animated by the hope of spoil, followed the course of the Flaminian way, and descended into the wide plains of Umbria ; and as they lay on the banks of the Clitumnus slaughtered and devoured the milk-white oxen, which had so long been preserved for the use of Roman triumphs. A lofty situation and a sud-

den tempest of thunder and lightning preserved the little city of Narni; but the king of the Goths, despising this ignoble prey, still advanced with unheeded vigor; and after he had passed through the stately arches adorned with the spoil of barbaric violences, he pitched his camp under the walls of Rome.

At the time of the invasion of Rome by Alaric, it was the seat of enormous wealth and effeminate luxury. It contained one thousand seven hundred and eighty palaces, the residences of the first people, and included within its precincts every thing to administer to pride and luxury—markets, temples, hippodromes, fountains, baths, porticoes, triumphal arches, shady groves, and artificial arcades. Several of the richest of the nobles received from their estates the annual sum of five thousand pounds weight of gold, about £160,000 sterling. Several of the Roman senators gave feasts which cost £100,000; and the masses of treasure in gold current, in plate, in the palaces, the shops, and the temples were prodigious. The city walls extended about twenty-eight miles, and the population was little short of a million and a quarter.

Such was the state of Rome under the reign of Honorius at the time when the Gothic army formed the siege, or rather the blockade of the city. By a skilful disposition of his numerous forces, who impatiently watched the moment of assault, Alaric encompassed the walls, commanded the twelve principal gates, intercepted all communication with the neighbouring country, and vigilantly guarded the navigation of the Tiber, from which the Romans derived the most plentiful supply of provisions.

The unfortunate city now gradually experienced the distress of scarcity, and at length the horrid calamities of famine. The daily allowance of three pounds of bread was reduced to one-half, to one-third, to nothing ; and the price of corn still continued to rise in a rapid and extravagant proportion.

The poorer citizens, who were unable to purchase the necessaries of life, solicited the precarious charity of the rich ; and for a while the public misery was alleviated by the humanity of Laeta, the widow of the emperor Gratian, who had fixed her residence at Rome and consecrated to the use of the indigent, the princely revenue which she annually received from the grateful successors of her husband.

But these private and temporary donations were insufficient to appease the hunger of a numerous people ; and the progress of famine invaded the marble palaces of the senators themselves. The persons of both sexes, who had been educated in the enjoyment of ease and luxury, discovered how little is requisite to supply the demands of nature ; and lavished their unavailing treasures of gold and silver, to obtain the coarse and scanty sustenance which they would formerly have rejected with disdain. The food the most repugnant to sense or imagination, the aliments the most unwholesome and pernicious to the constitution, were eagerly devoured, and fiercely disputed, by the rage of hunger. A dark suspicion was entertained, that some desperate wretches fed on the bodies of their fellow-creatures, whom they had secretly murdered ; and even mothers (such was the horrid conflict of the two most powerful instincts implanted by nature in the human breast), even

mothers are said to have tasted the flesh of their slaughtered infants.

Many thousands of the inhabitants of Rome expired in their houses, or in the streets, for want of sustenance; and as the public sepulchres without the walls were in the power of the enemy, the stench which arose from so many putrid and unburied carcasses, infected the air; and the miseries of famine were succeeded and aggravated by the contagion of a pestilential disease. The assurances of speedy and effectual relief, which were repeatedly transmitted from the court of Ravenna, supported, for some time, the fainting resolution of the Romans, till at length the despair of any human aid tempted them to treat with the invader.

The last resource of the Romans was in the clemency, or at least in the moderation, of the king of the Goths. The senate, who in this emergency assumed the supreme powers of government, appointed two ambassadors to negotiate with the enemy. This important trust was delegated to Basilius, a senator, of Spanish extraction, and already conspicuous in the administration of provinces; and to John, the first tribune of the notaries, who was peculiarly qualified, by his dexterity in business, as well as by his former intimacy with the Gothic prince.

When they were introduced into his presence, they declared, perhaps in a more lofty style than became their abject condition, that the Romans were resolved to maintain their dignity, either in peace or war; and that, if Alaric refused them a fair and honourable capitulation, he might sound his trumpets, and prepare to give battle to an innumerable

people, exercised in arms, and animated by despair. "The thicker the hay the easier it is mowed," was the concise reply of the barbarian; and this rustic metaphor was accompanied by a loud insulting laugh, expressive of his contempt for the menaces of an unwarlike populace, enervated by luxury before they were emaciated by famine.

He then condescended to fix the ransom which he would accept as the price of his retreat from the walls of Rome: all the gold and silver in the city, whether it were the property of the state, or of individuals; all the rich and precious moveables; and all the slaves who could prove their title to the name of Barbarians. The ministers of the senate presumed to ask, in a modest and suppliant tone, "If such, O King, are your demands, what do you intend to leave us?" "Your lives," replied the haughty conqueror: they trembled, and retired. Yet before they retired, a short suspension of arms was granted, which allowed some time for a more temperate negotiation.

The stern features of Alaric were insensibly relaxed; he abated much of the rigour of his terms; and at length consented to raise the siege, on the immediate payment of five thousand pounds of gold, of thirty thousands pounds of silver, of four thousand robes of silk, of three thousand pieces of fine scarlet cloth, and of three thousand pounds weight of pepper.\*

\* Pepper was a favourite ingredient of the most expensive Roman cookery, and the best sort commonly sold for fifteen denarii, or ten shillings, the pound. Pliny, *Hist. Natur.* xii. 14.

But the public treasury was exhausted ; the annual rents of the great estates in Italy and the provinces, were intercepted by the calamities of war ; the gold and gems had been exchanged, during the famine, for the vilest sustenance ; the hoards of secret wealth were still concealed by the obstinacy of avarice ; and some remains of consecrated spoils afforded the only resource that could avert the impending ruin of the city.

As soon as the Romans had satisfied the rapacious demands of Alaric, they were restored in some measure to the enjoyment of peace and plenty. Several of the gates were cautiously opened ; the importation of provisions from the river and the adjacent country was no longer obstructed by the Goths ; the citizens resorted in crowds to the free market, which was held during three days in the suburbs ; and while the merchants who undertook this gainful trade made a considerable profit, the future subsistence of the city was secured by the ample magazines which were deposited in the public and private granaries.

A more regular discipline than could have been expected was maintained in the camp of Alaric ; and the wise Barbarian justified his regard for the faith of treaties, by the just severity with which he chastised a party of licentious Goths, who had insulted some Roman citizens on the road to Ostia. His army, enriched by the contributions of the capital, slowly advanced into the fair and fruitful province of Tuscany, where he proposed to establish his winter quarters ; and the Gothic standard became the refuge of forty thousand Barbarian slaves, who had broke their chains, and aspired, under the command

of their great deliverer, to revenge the injuries and the disgrace of their cruel servitude.

About the same time, he received a more honourable reinforcement of Goths and Huns, whom Adolphus, the brother of his wife, had conducted, at his pressing invitation, from the banks of the Danube to those of the Tyber ; and who had cut their way, with some difficulty and loss, through the superior number of the Imperial troops. A victorious leader, who united the daring spirit of a Barbarian with the art and discipline of a Roman general, was at the head of an hundred thousand fighting men ; and Italy pronounced, with terror and respect, the formidable name of Alaric.

Alaric, having received the treasure, departed for a short time into the Italian provinces ; but in the year 410 he again returned and advanced within three miles of Ravenna.

His indignation was kindled by the report, that a rival chieftain, one Sarus, the personal enemy of Adolphus, and the hereditary foe of the house of Balti, had been received into the palace. At the head of three hundred followers, that fearless Barbarian immediately sallied from the gates of Ravenna ; surprised and cut in pieces a considerable body of Goths ; re-entered the city in triumph ; and was permitted to insult his adversary by the voice of a herald, who publicly declared, that the guilt of Alaric had for ever excluded him from the friendship and alliance of the emperor. The crime and folly of the court of Ravenna was expiated a third time by the calamities of Rome.

The king of the Goths, who no longer dissembled

his appetite for revenge, now appeared in arms under the walls of the capital ; and the trembling senate, without any hopes of relief, prepared by a desperate resistance, to delay the ruin of their country. But they were unable to guard against the secret conspiracy of their slaves and domestics ; who, either from birth or interest, were attached to the cause of the enemy. At the hour of midnight, the Salarian gate was silently opened, and the inhabitants were awakened by the tremendous sound of the Gothic trumpet. Eleven hundred and sixty-three years after the foundation of Rome, the Imperial city, which had subdued and civilised so considerable a part of mankind, was delivered to the licentious fury of the tribes of Germany and Scythia.

The proclamation of Alaric, when he forced his entrance into a vanquished city, discovered, however, some regard for the laws of humanity and religion. He encouraged his troops boldly to seize the rewards of valour, and to enrich themselves with the spoils of a wealthy and effeminate people ; but he exhorted them, at the same time, to spare the lives of the unresisting citizens, and to respect the churches of the apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, as holy and inviolable sanctuaries. Amidst the horrors of a nocturnal tumult, several of the Christian Goths displayed the fervour of a recent conversion ; and some instances of their uncommon piety and moderation are related, and perhaps adorned, by the zeal of ecclesiastical writers.

While the Barbarians roamed through the city in quest of prey, the humble dwelling of an aged virgin, who had devoted her life to the service of the altar, was forced open by one of the powerful Goths. He

immediately demanded, though in civil language, all the gold and silver in her possession ; and was astonished at the readiness with which she conducted him to a splendid hoard of massive plate, of the richest materials, and the most curious workmanship. The Barbarian viewed with wonder and delight this valuable acquisition, till he was interrupted by a serious admonition, addressed to him in the following words : " These," said she, " are the consecrated vessels belonging to St. Peter ; if you presume to touch them, the sacrilegious deed will remain on your conscience. For my part, I dare not keep what I am unable to defend."

The Gothic captain, struck with reverential awe, dispatched a messenger to inform the king of the treasure which he had discovered ; and received a peremptory order from Alaric, that all the consecrated plate and ornaments should be transported, without damage or delay, to the church of the apostle.

From the extremity, perhaps, of the Quirinal hill, to the distant quarter of the Vatican, a numerous detachment of Goths, marching in order of battle through the principal streets, protected, with glittering arms, the long train of their devout companions, who bore aloft, on their heads, the sacred vessels of gold and silver ; and the martial shouts of the Barbarians were mingled with the sound of religious psalmody. From all the adjacent houses, a crowd of Christians hastened to join this edifying procession ; and a multitude of fugitives, without distinction of age or rank, or even of sect, had the good fortune to escape to the secure and hospitable sanctuary of the Vatican.

In the sack of Rome, some rare and extraordinary

examples of Barbarian virtue had been deservedly applauded. But the holy precincts of the Vatican, and the apostolic churches, could receive a very small proportion of the Roman people : many thousand warriors, more especially of the Huns, who served under the standard of Alaric, were strangers to the name, or at least to the faith, of Christ ; and the streets of the city were filled with dead bodies, which remained without burial during the general consternation.

The despair of the citizens was sometimes converted into fury ; and whenever the Barbarians were provoked by opposition, they extended the promiscuous massacre to the feeble, the innocent, and the helpless. The private revenge of forty thousand slaves was exercised without pity or remorse ; and the ignominious lashes which they had formerly received, were washed away in the blood of the guilty or obnoxious families.

In the pillage of Rome a just preference was given to gold and jewels, which contained the greatest value in the smallest compass and weight ; but after these portable riches had been removed by the more diligent robbers, the palaces of Rome were rudely stripped of their splendid and costly furniture. The side-boards of massy plate, and the variegated wardrobes of silk and purple, were irregularly piled in the waggons that always followed the march of a Gothic army. The most exquisite works of art were roughly handled, or wantonly destroyed : many a statue was melted for the sake of the precious materials ; and many a vase, in the division of the spoil, was shivered into fragments by the stroke of a battle-axe.

The acquisition of riches served only to stimulate

the avarice of the rapacious Barbarians, who proceeded, by threats, by blows, and by tortures, to force from their prisoners the confession of hidden treasure. Visible splendour and expense were alleged as the proof of a plentiful fortune ; the appearance of poverty was imputed to a parsimonious disposition ; and the obstinacy of some misers, who endured the most cruel torments before they would discover the secret object of their affection, was fatal to many unhappy wretches, who expired under the lash, for refusing to reveal their imaginary treasures.

The edifices of Rome, though the damage has been much exaggerated, received some injury from the violence of the Goths. At their entrance through the Salarian gate, they fired the adjacent houses to guide their march, and to distract the attention of the citizens : the flames, which encountered no obstacle in the disorder of the night, consumed many private and public buildings ; and the ruins of the palace of Sallust remained, in the age of Justinian, a stately monument of the Gothic conflagration.

Alaric evacuated Rome on the sixth day after the capture, and at the head of an army, encumbered with rich and weighty spoils, he advanced along the Appian way into the southern provinces of Italy, destroying whatever dared to oppose his passage, and contenting himself with the plunder of the unresisting country.

Each soldier, however, claimed an ample portion of the substantial plenty, the corn and cattle, oil and wine, that was daily collected and consumed in the Gothic camp ; and the principal warriors insulted the villas and gardens once inhabited by Lucullus and

Cicero. Along the beauteous coast of Campania, their trembling captives, the sons and daughters of Roman senators, presented in goblets of gold and gems large draughts of Falernian wine to the haughty victors, who stretched their huge limbs under the shade of plane-trees, artificially disposed to exclude the scorching rays and to admit the genial warmth of the sun. These delights were enhanced by the memory of past hardships : the comparison of their native soil, the bleak and barren hills of Scythia, and the frozen banks of the Elbe and Danube, added new charms to the felicity of the Italian climate.

Whether fame, or conquest, or riches, were the object of Alaric, he pursued that object with an indefatigable ardour, which could neither be quelled by adversity nor satiated by success. No sooner had he reached the extreme end of Italy, than he was attracted by the neighbouring prospect of a fertile and peaceful island.

Yet even the possession of Sicily, he considered only as an intermediate step to the important expedition which he already meditated against the continent of Africa. The straits of Rhegium and Messina are twelve miles in length, and in the narrowest passage, about one mile and a half broad ; and the fabulous monsters of the deep, the rocks of Scylla, and the whirlpool of Charibdis, could terrify none but the most timid and unskilful mariners. But as soon as the first division of the Goths had embarked, a sudden tempest arose, which sunk or scattered many of the transports ; their courage was daunted by the terrors of a new element ; and the whole design was defeated by the premature death of Alaric, which

fixed, after a short illness, the fatal term of his conquests.

The ferocious character of the Barbarians was displayed in the funeral of a hero, whose valour and fortune they celebrated with mournful applause. By the labour of a captive multitude, they forcibly diverted the course of the Busentinus, a small river that washes the walls of Consentia. The royal sepulchre, adorned with the splendid spoils and trophies of Rome, was constructed in the vacant bed ; the waters were then restored to their natural channel ; and the secret spot where the remains of Alaric had been deposited, was for ever concealed by the inhuman massacre of the prisoners, who had been employed to execute the work.

## WALLACE, THE HERO OF SCOTLAND.



IN Renfrewshire, as well as in other places of Scotland, a variety of objects bear the name of the favourite ancient hero Wallace. Thus in their descent from the hills in the neighbourhood of Greenock, some rivulets form beautiful cascades, appearing from the shore like wreaths of snow. The chief of them, behind

which, from the scooping of the rock, it is very possible to walk, bears the name of this favourite warrior.

In every quarter steep precipices, huge falls of water, high rocks, Roman stations and encampments, and whatever objects seem most remarkable, are designated by a name which is dear to every romantic, youthful, and patriotic mind. This occurs in a particular manner along the banks of the Clyde. This will not appear wonderful, when it is considered that Wallace was a native of that district.

Wallace came forward at a most interesting period, when the disputed succession to the Scottish crown had been submitted to the decision of the king of

England, Edward the First. In executing his office of an umpire, the English monarch had contrived to obtain a complete ascendancy over the nobles and the competitors for the crown. Baliol had been preferred, and in return had acknowledged the dependence of Scotland upon the English crown. He at last, under the mortification of repeated insults, resigned the crown of Scotland into the possession of Edward, on the 2nd of July, 1296.

All Scotland was now overrun by a royal English army, and submitted to the conqueror; but it appears that the English monarch had entrusted the government of Scotland to improper persons. Warren, Earl of Surrey, who had been appointed governor, took up his abode in England, on pretence of recovering his health. Cressingham, the treasurer, was a voluptuous, proud, and selfish ecclesiastic; while Ormesby, the justitiary, was hated for his severity. Under these officers, the administration of Edward became more and more feeble; bands of robbers infested the highways; and the English government was universally despised.

At this critical moment arose Sir William Wallace, the hero so much celebrated in Scottish fables, and by which, indeed, his real exploits are so much obscured, that it is difficult to give an authentic relation of them.

Wallace was the second son of a knight of ancient family, Sir Malcolm Wallace, of Ellerslie, in Renfrewshire. Wallace had all the qualities of a popular hero—a strength and stature corresponding to his daring courage; and also, it cannot be doubted, from the known history of his career, as well as from his

traditional fame, many intellectual endowments of a high order; decision, military genius, the talent of command, a stirring although rude eloquence; and, in every way, a wonderful power of reaching the hearts of men, and drawing them along with him. Above all, an enthusiastic patriotism, and a fierce and unextinguishable hatred of the English domination, were passions so strong in Wallace, that while he lived, be the hour as dark as it might, all felt, that the cause of the national independence could never be wholly lost.

It is the glorious distinction of Wallace, that while all others despaired of his country's cause, he did not despair; that when all others submitted to the conqueror, he betook himself to the woods, and remained a free man; that when there was none other to renew the struggle, he started up in the time of universal dismay, and showed, by an example precious to all time, that even in the worst circumstances, nothing is really gone for ever, when the spirit of effort and enterprise is awake.

Wallace is first mentioned in the month of May, 1297. At this time he was merely captain of a small band of marauders, most of them probably outlaws, like himself, accustomed to infest the English quarters by predatory attacks; and many castles did they seize by dint of the most heroic bravery, combined with the most cunning stratagem; and being successful in his predatory incursions, his party became more numerous, and he was joined by Sir William Douglas. With their united forces, these two allies attempted to surprise Ormesby, the justitiary, while he held his courts at Scoon; but he

saved himself by a precipitate flight. After this, the Scots roved over the whole country, assaulted castles, and massacred the English. Their party was joined by many persons of rank; among whom were Robert Wisheart, Bishop of Glasgow, the Steward of Scotland, and his brother Sir Alexander de Lindsay, Sir Richard Lunden, and Sir Andrew Moray of Bothwell. In the meanwhile, Warren, the governor appointed by Edward, exerted himself in quelling an insurrection which he had neglected to prevent. He hastened Sir Henry Percy and Sir Robert Clifford, with a chosen and numerous body, against the Scots. The English found them strongly posted near Irvine, formidable in numbers, but through dissension fatally enfeebled.

All the leaders were independent, all untractable; they would neither fight, retire, nor treat, by common consent. Sir Richard Lunden, a baron of approved courage, had hitherto refused fealty to Edward. He went over to the English with his followers; and boldly justified his defection, saying, "I will remain no longer in a party that is at variance with itself." Some of the leaders of this discordant army consented to treat with the English. Bruce, the Steward, and his brother, Alexander de Lindsay, and Sir William Douglas, acknowledged their offences, and for themselves and their adherents made submission to Edward.

The Bishop of Glasgow seems to have been the negotiator of this treaty (9th July, 1297). But Wallace scorned submission. Leaving the opulent and powerful barons to treat with their conquerors, he collected together the faithful companions of his

fortunes, and retired indignantly towards the north: The only baron who adhered to him was Sir Andrew Moray of Bothwell. The barons who made the capitulation at Irvine, had treated not only for themselves but for their party.

Wallace and his associates would not accede to the capitulation. Under the conduct of Wallace and Sir Andrew Moray, the Scottish army increased in numbers and force. Whilst Wallace besieged the castle of Dundee, he received intelligence that the English drew near to Stirling. Wallace charged the citizens of Dundee, under pain of death, to continue the blockade of the castle. He hastened with all his troops to guard the important passage of the Forth, and encamped behind a rising ground in the neighbourhood of the abbey of Cambuskenneth.

Brian Fitz-Allan had been appointed governor of Scotland by the English king. Warren remained with the army, waiting the arrival of his successor. He therefore studied to avoid a general action. He imagined that Wallace might be induced, by fair conditions, to lay down his arms, and dispatched two friars to the Scottish camp, proffering terms. "Return," said Wallace, "and tell your masters that we came not here to treat, but to assert our right, and to set Scotland free. Let them advance, they will find us prepared." "He defies us," cried the English, and impatiently demanded to be led on. Sir Richard Lunden remonstrated against the extravagance of making a numerous army defile by a long narrow wooden bridge, in presence of the enemy; telling them, that the Scots would attack them before they could form on the plain to the north of the bridge, and thus

overthrow their disunited forces. He offered to show them a ford, and, with five hundred horse and a select detachment of infantry, to come round upon the rear of the enemy, and by this diversion facilitate the operations of the main body. His judicious proposal was rejected, under pretence that the army would be thereby divided, but probably because the English were not assured of his fidelity. Warren himself still inclined to avoid a general engagement; but Cressingham passionately exclaimed, "Why do we thus protract the war, and waste the king's treasures? Let us fight, as is our bounden duty." To the ignorant impetuosity of this ecclesiastic Warren submitted his own judgment. Early the following morning (the 11th of September) the English began to pass over by the bridge, a narrow wooden structure, along which, even with no impediment, a force could not have been led in some hours. The issue was what might have been anticipated. Wallace waited till about half the English had passed over; then detaching a part of his forces to take possession of the extremity of the bridge, as soon as he perceived the communication effectually cut off, he rushed down upon the portion of the enemy who had thus put themselves in his power, as they were still forming, and in a moment threw them into confusion.

Many thousands of the English were slain, or driven into the water. Cressingham himself, who had led the van, was one of those who fell; he had, by the severity of his administration, made himself particularly hateful to the Scots, who now, stripping the skin from his dead body, cut it into small pieces;

to be preserved, "not as relics," says Hemingford, "but for spite." Wallace himself, it is affirmed, had a sword-belt made of part of it. No prisoners appear to have been taken ; and nearly all the English that crossed the river seem to have been destroyed. One knight, however, Sir Marmaduke Twenge, putting spurs to his horse, gallantly cut his way back through the force that guarded the bridge, and gained the opposite side in safety. The loss of the Scots would have been inconsiderable, if Sir Andrew Moray of Bothwell, the faithful companion of Wallace, had not received a mortal wound (11th September, 1297). A panic seized the English who had been spectators of the route ; they burnt the bridge, abandoned all their baggage, and precipitately fled to Berwick. Thus was Scotland once more free.

The surrender of the castle of Dundee, and of the other strengths of Scotland, was the immediate consequence of the victory at Stirling. The Scots took possession of the town of Berwick, which the English had evacuated. A great famine arose in Scotland, the consequence of bad seasons, and of the disorders of war. With the view of procuring sustenance to his numerous followers, Wallace marched his whole army into the north of England. He took as his partner in command the young Sir Andrew Moray, whose father had fallen at Stirling.

The English historians pathetically describe the terrors and misery of the inhabitants of Cumberland and Northumberland at this season. The Scottish inroads were generally momentary and transient; but now a mighty army fixed its residence

in the north of England. That wide tract of country from Cockermouth and Carlisle to the gates of Newcastle, was wasted with all the fury of revenge, license, and rapacity. Wallace attempted to repress these outrages, but in vain. "Abide with me," said he to the canons of Hexceldsham, "there alone can you be secure; for my people are evil doers, and I may not punish them." This grievous visitation endured for upwards of three weeks. Wallace then drew off his army.

Wallace now assumed the title of Guardian of Scotland, in name of King John, and by the consent of the Scottish nation. That he deserved the office is certain. How he obtained it must remain for ever problematical. Under that title he conferred the constabulary of Dundee on "Alexander, named Skirmischur, and his heirs, for his faithful aid in bearing the royal banner of Scotland, which service he actually performs." This grant is said to have been made "with the consent and approbation of the Scottish nobility" (29th March, 1298). But thereafter the great barons of Scotland began to entertain the utmost jealousy of Wallace. His elevation wounded their pride; his great services reproached their inactivity in the public cause. Pride and envy might affect to consider his hereditary grants as an alarming exercise of sovereign power.

Thus did the spirit of distrust inflame the passions and perplex the counsels of the nation, at that important moment, when the being of Scotland depended on its unanimity. In the meanwhile, Edward prepared to restore his interest in Scotland by

a powerful army. A party of English landed in the north of Fife under the Earl of Pembroke. Wallace attacked and routed them in the forest of Black Ironside ; but the royal army advanced by the eastern borders. In the neighbourhood of Falkirk the hostile armies met.

Wallace was supported by John Cummin, of Badenoch, the younger, Sir John Stewart, of Benskill, brother to the Steward, Sir John Graham of Abercorn, and M'Duff, grand-uncle of the young Earl of Fife. The Scottish historians represent their countrymen as engaged in fatal dissension on the day of battle. The English historians represent them as fighting with great courage and steadiness. The Scots were completely defeated. M'Duff and Sir John Graham fell. Stewart was also killed.

In the meanwhile, by the jealousy of the nobles, Wallace appears to have been reduced to the condition of a private man, in that nation which he had once delivered. Edward again invaded Scotland in 1298 ; but the Scots, taught by experience, avoided an offensive war. The war still continued ; and, in 1303, Edward, with a victorious army, recovered the country the length of Caithness. The whole kingdom submitted ; but amid this wreck of the national liberties Wallace despaired not. He had lived a free man : a free man he resolved to die. Simon Fraser, who had too often complied with the times, now caught the same heroic sentiments. But their endeavours to rouse their countrymen were in vain. The season of resistance was past. Wallace perceived that there remained no more hope, and sought out a place of concealment, where, eluding

the vengeance of Edward, he might silently lament over his fallen country.

Nothing now remained of Scotland unconquered excepting the castle of Stirling, which was at length compelled to surrender. But Wallace still lived; and while he existed, though without forces, and without an ostensible place of residence, his countrymen were not absolutely without hope, or Edward without fear. With an anxiety which marks little vigour of spirit, he eagerly sought to discover the retreat of this single Scotsman who had never professed submission to his authority; and who, therefore, in all the risings of that people, could alone be considered as acting honestly, and without breach of faith. Ralph de Haliburton, a prisoner, offered his assistance for discovering Wallace. Edward allowed him a temporary liberty, "to try what he would do" in that dishonourable office. What Haliburton did is unknown. Certain it is that Wallace was discovered. The popular tradition is, that his friend Sir John Monteith betrayed him to the English. Wallace was arraigned at Westminster as a traitor to Edward, and as having burnt villages, entered castles, and slaughtered many subjects of England. "I never was a traitor," said Wallace. To the rest of his indictment he pleaded guilty. Sentence of death was pronounced against him; and he was put to death as a traitor, on the 23rd of August, 1305, at the usual place of execution, the Elms in West Smithfield. He was dragged thither at the tails of horses, and then hanged on a high gallows; after which, while he yet breathed, his entrails were taken out, and burat

before his face. The barbarous butchery was then completed, by the head being struck off, and the body being divided into quarters. The head was afterwards placed on a pole on London bridge ; the right arm was sent to be set up on Newcastle ; the left arm to Berwick ; the right foot and limb to Perth, and the left to Aberdeen.

Thus perished Wallace, whom Edward could never subdue. In his last moments, he asserted that independence which a whole nation had renounced. It is singular that Edward should have pardoned, and even trusted the persons who had often made and often violated their oaths of obedience ; while the man who never acknowledged his sovereignty fell the single victim of his resentment. I have here only noticed the ostensible parts of Wallace's history, the truth of which is admitted by the least credulous of modern historians ; but it is evident, that much ought to be added to complete the detail of his life. Before the son of a private gentleman, without power and without vassals, could contrive not only to make head against an English invasion, but to number among his followers the proudest and the bravest hereditary barons of the kingdom, he must have performed unexampled prodigies of personal valour, as well as have displayed unprecedented prudence and magnanimity. Accordingly, the rude historians of his own times represent him as possessed of irresistible bodily strength ; and as endowed with the virtues of piety, generosity, and patriotism, in the most eminent degree. To this last virtue, indeed, his claim is undeniable ; because, without claiming to himself any permanent prize

but that of the independence of his country, he adhered to the pursuit of that object, whether at the head of armies, or concealing himself as a fugitive; and the ascendancy of his character, and the confidence reposed in him by his countrymen, rendered him constantly formidable. His historians, and tradition, have filled up the active period of his life with endless exploits and enterprises, many of which give interest to his fortunes. Storming fortified places, ambuscades, and attacks of every sort upon the English parties and garrisons, are represented as his daily employment. And some great battles are described as having been fought by him, which historians now pass over, because not to be traced from their political effects, or because not mentioned in English records.

BATTLES OF CRESSY, AGINCOURT, AND  
BLENHEIM.



BATTLE OF CRESSY.

IN the summer of the year 1346, Edward III. invaded France, at the head of an army consisting of four thousand men-at-arms, ten thousand archers, ten thousand Welsh infantry, and six thousand Irish. These last bodies were light disorderly troops, fitter

for doing execution in a pursuit, or scouring the country, than for any regular action. The bow was always esteemed a frivolous weapon, where true military discipline was known and regular bodies of well-armed foot were maintained. The only solid force in Edward's army were the men-at-arms ; and even these, being all cavalry, were much inferior in action to good infantry ; and as the whole were new-levied, it gives, as Hume observes, "but a very mean idea of the military force of those ages ; which, being ignorant of every other art, had not properly cultivated the art of war itself, the sole object of general attention."

After making himself master of the principal places in Lower Normandy, Edward turned his arms to cross the Seine to its northern bank, and so proceed to Picardy and Flanders. Having surmounted various difficulties on his march, he at last arrived on the river Somme, which flows by Amiens and Abbeville to the English Channel ; but there he found the bridges either broken down or strongly guarded. A body of French troops were stationed on the opposite side of the river ; and he was informed that the king of France, Philip de Valois, was advancing against him, from the other quarter, with an army of a hundred thousand men. In such an extremity, Edward found a peasant, who, betraying the cause of his country from the influence of a great reward, informed him of a ford in the Somme, below Abbeville, which might be passed in safety when the tide was out. Thither Edward hastened ; and although bodies of French troops were posted on the opposite side, he lost not a moment ; but throwing himself into the

river, sword in hand, at the head of his troops, he drove the French from their position, and pursued them to some distance on the plain. The French under Philip arrived at the ford, when the rear of the English were still engaged in the water—so narrow was the escape which Edward, by his prudence and celerity, made from this imminent danger. The rising of the tide in the Somme prevented Philip from following him, obliging him to return to the bridge of Abbeville, by which much time was lost.

When Edward had proceeded a short way in the plain of Picardy, he perceived the very critical situation in which he stood, in the midst of an enemy's country so powerful and so enterprising as the French; he therefore resolved to take post on some advantageous ground. This he did, near the village of Cressy (or more correctly, Crecy); and arranging his men in excellent order, determined there to await the arrival of the enemy, and hoped that their eagerness to engage and to prevent his retreat, would draw them on to some rash and ill-concerted action. Edward's army was divided into three lines, and formed on a gentle ascent. The first line was commanded by his eldest son, Edward, prince of Wales, commonly called the Black Prince (from the colour of his armour); the second, by some distinguished English warriors; and the third, by Edward himself, in person. By this disposition he was ready either to support the two first lines or to secure a retreat, in case of any misfortune. He also drew trenches on his flanks, to defend himself against the attacks of the French, who were so superior in numbers; and his baggage was placed in his rear, in a wood covered by an intrench-

ment. This masterly arrangement of his forces served to compose their minds; and Edward rode through their ranks with such an air of cheerfulness as to fill the men with entire confidence. He represented to them the necessity to which they were reduced, and the certain destruction that awaited them, if, shut up as they were, in the midst of their foes, they trusted to anything but their own valour. He reminded them of the successes they had hitherto obtained, and pointed out the advantages they had, by their order of battle, over the immense multitudes opposed to them.

It is said that Edward, in this famous battle, employed a new invention against the French, placing in his front some pieces of artillery, the first that had been used on any remarkable occasion in Europe. The use of artillery was at this time known in France as well as in England, but Philip had, perhaps, in his haste, left his cannon behind him. All his other movements discovered the same imprudence and precipitation. He had marched rapidly from Abbeville; but before he reached the English army, he learned from his scouts, that they were drawn up in great order, and waiting to receive him. Philip commanded his troops to halt, in order to recover somewhat from their fatigue; but their former precipitancy, and the impatience of the French nobility, put it out of his power to restore his army to regular order; so that they arrived in presence of the English already fatigued and disordered, and very imperfectly formed into three lines. The first line consisted of Italians, commanded by a noble Genoese; the second was under the king's brother, the Count of Alençon; and

Philip himself was posted in the third. Besides the French monarch, there were no less than three other crowned heads in the engagement : the king of Bohemia ; the king of the Romans, his son ; and the king of Majorca ; together with all the nobility and great vassals of France. Philip's army was now increased to above one hundred and twenty thousand men, while Edward had not one third of that number.

The English on the approach of the enemy, kept their ranks firm and immovable. There had happened, a little before the action began, a thunder-shower, which had moistened the strings of the Genoese cross-bows ; their arrows therefore fell short of the English ; but these latter, taking their bows out of their cases, poured such a shower of arrows on the Italians in the first line, as to throw them into disorder, and drive them back on the second line under Alençon, who, enraged at their cowardice, ordered his men to put them to the sword. The English artillery then fired amidst this crowd, while their archers discharged their arrows among them, and nothing was to be seen in that vast body of men but confusion and dismay.

The young prince of Wales, observing this disorder, led on his line ; but the French cavalry, delivered from the Genoese, who fled in all directions, advanced and began to enclose him round. The second line of the English then moved on to support the prince in the first ; when the battle becoming very dangerous, the earl of Warwick sent to entreat succours from Edward himself, who had chosen his station on a rising ground, whence he surveyed the whole action. His answer was, that he was confident the prince

would show himself worthy to be his son, and that he reserved for him the whole honours of the day.

When this was reported to the troops engaged, it filled them with such ardour, that they made an attack with redoubled valour on the French. The Count of Alençon was slain ; the whole line of cavalry was thrown into confusion ; the riders were killed or dismounted ; and no quarter was that day granted by the victors.

The king of France advancing to support his brother, found him already dead, and his line in disorder. The confusion now became extreme : Philip, having lost one horse, was again mounted, and still determined to maintain the struggle, when one of his attendants, seizing the reins of his horse, hurried the king off the field. The French army then took to flight, and was followed and put to the sword, without mercy, by the English, until the approach of night put an end to the pursuit.

This celebrated battle lasted from three in the afternoon till night. The next morning was foggy ; and, as the English observed many of the French wandering in disorder, they employed a stratagem to draw them into their hands. They erected on the high grounds some French standards taken in the action ; and all who were allured by these false signals were put to the sword. In excuse for this inhumanity, it was alleged, that the king of France had given similar orders to his troops ; but the real reason, says Hume, was, that the English, in their present situation, did not choose to be encumbered with prisoners. In the battle and on the following day, there fell, according to a moderate computation, twelve hundred

French knights, fourteen hundred gentlemen, four thousand men at arms, besides about thirty thousand of inferior rank. Many of the principal nobles of France remained on the field, and the kings of Bohemia and Majorca were among the slain. The fate of the king of Bohemia was remarkable : he was blind from age; but being resolved to hazard his person, and to set an example to others, he ordered the reins of his horse to be tied, on each side, to the horses of two of his attendants, and their three dead bodies were afterwards found among the slain, with their horses standing by them in that situation. On his helmet was a crest of three ostrich feathers ; and his motto was the German words *Ich dien* (I serve), which the prince of Wales adopted, and which have been worn by his successors down to this day, as a memorial of the signal victory of Cressy.

This action seems not less remarkable for the small loss sustained by the English, than for the great slaughter of the French. The English are said to have lost only one esquire, and three knights, with very few of inferior rank ; which statement, if correct, proves that the disposition adopted by Edward, and the rash disorderly attack by the French, had rendered the whole affair rather a rout than a battle—which was, indeed, the common case with engagements in those times.

## BATTLE OF AGINCOURT.

The successes which the English have in different ages obtained over the French, have been much owing to the situation of England. From its insular posi-

tion, the former nation could take advantage of every misfortune which attended the latter, and was little exposed to the danger of reprisals. The English never left their country but when they were conducted by a king of extraordinary genius, or when they found their neighbours divided by intestine factions, or when supported by a powerful alliance on the continent : and, as all these circumstances concurred in the time of the renowned Henry V., he resolved to take advantage of them.

In the summer of 1415, Henry, imitating the conduct of Edward III., carried over to Normandy an army of six thousand men-at-arms, and twenty-four thousand foot, mostly archers. His first enterprise was the siege of Harfleur, at the mouth of the Seine ; which town, after a gallant defence, at last fell into his hands. His army, however, had suffered so much from the fatigues of the siege, and the unusual heat of the weather, that Henry could enter on no other undertaking ; and was obliged, after all his mighty preparations, to think of returning to England.

He had dismissed his ships from Harfleur, so that he was under a necessity of marching by land to Calais, before he could reach a place of safety. A numerous French army, of fourteen thousand men-at-arms and forty thousand foot, was already assembled in Normandy, to oppose his retreat. Henry, therefore, offered to restore Harfleur to the French, if they would grant him a safe passage to Calais ; but the proposal being rejected, he resolved to make his way, by valour and conduct, through all opposition.

That he might not discourage his small army by the appearance of a flight, nor expose them to the

hazards attending precipitate marches, he made slow and deliberate journeys, till he reached the river Somme, which he prepared to pass at the place where Edward had, in a like situation, escaped from Philip de Valois. But he found the ford rendered impassable by the precautions of the French general, and guarded by a strong body on the opposite bank ; so that he was obliged to march higher up the river, in search of a passage. Henry was continually harassed on his march by flying parties of French ; he saw bodies on the other side of the river, ready to oppose his crossing : his provisions were cut off ; his troops were worn out with fatigue and sickness ; and his affairs seemed now in a desperate situation. He, however, at last met with a passage over the river, near the town of St. Quintin, which not being sufficiently guarded, he surprised, and carried over his army in safety.

He then bent his course towards Calais ; but was constantly exposed to danger from the French army, which had also passed the Somme, and, getting before him, endeavoured to intercept his retreat. After advancing some time, Henry from a height discovered the whole French troops drawn up on the plain of Agincourt, and so posted that it was impossible for him to proceed without coming to an engagement.

Nothing in appearance could be more unequal than the battle on which his safety and his fortunes depended. His army was reduced to nearly half the number which had disembarked at Harfleur ; and even these laboured under every discouragement and want. The enemy were four times more numerous, plentifully supplied with provisions of every kind,

and commanded by the dauphin and the other princes of the blood royal of France. The situation of Henry being exactly similar to that of Edward at Cressy, and to that of the Black Prince at Poictiers, the memory of those great battles inspired the English with courage, and made them hope for a like deliverance from their difficulties. The king likewise observed the same prudent conduct which had been adopted by those great commanders. He drew up his army on a narrow space of ground, having woods on each hand, which defended his flanks ; and in that position waited for the attack of the French.

Had the French commanders been able either to reason justly on the present circumstances of both armies, or to profit by experience, they would have declined an engagement ; and waited till necessity, obliging the English to advance, had made them relinquish the advantages of their situation. But the impetuous valour of the French nobility, and their vain confidence in superior numbers, brought on an action, which proved the source of infinite calamity to their country.

The French archers on horseback, and their men-at-arms, advanced upon the English archers, who had fixed palisades before their front to break the enemy's attack ; and who safely, from behind that defence, assailed them with such showers of arrows as nothing could resist. The clay soil, moistened by rain, proved another obstacle to the assaults of the French cavalry : the wounded men and horses deranged their ranks ; the narrow ground on which they acted prevented them from recovering their proper order, and their whole army soon became a scene of confusion and

terror. Henry, then, perceiving his advantage, ordered his archers, who were light and unencumbered, to advance upon the enemy, and secure the victory. They fell with their battle-axes upon the French, who in their present posture could neither defend themselves nor quit the field ; so that multitudes were cut to pieces without resistance. The English archers were supported by the men-at-arms, who pushed on and made dreadful havoc among the enemy.

When all opposition seemed to be at an end, the English began to make prisoners; and having advanced across the field of action, into the open plain, they discovered the rear of the French army still formed in order of battle. At the same time they were alarmed by a noise and alarm from behind, proceeding from a body of peasants who, headed by some officers of Picardy, had attacked their baggage, and were doing execution on the unarmed followers of their camp. Henry seeing the enemy on all sides of him, began to entertain apprehensions from his prisoners, and therefore thought it necessary to issue orders for putting them to death ; but when he discovered the true cause of the alarm, he stopped the slaughter in time to save a great number of lives.

No battle was ever more fatal to France, by the number of princes and nobles slain or taken prisoners. The killed were computed, on the whole, to have amounted to ten thousand men; and, as the slaughter fell chiefly on the cavalry, it is said that of these eight thousand were gentlemen. The prisoners in Henry's hands were fourteen thousand. All the English that were slain, it is said, did not exceed

forty ; though some writers, with much greater probability, make the number more considerable.

## BATTLE OF BLENHEIM.

The two armies met within a short distance of Dornawert, and nearly in the same plains where Marshal Villars had gained a victory the year before. It is well known that Villars, then in the Cevennes, having received a letter from an officer in Tallard's army, and written the night before the battle, acquainting him with the disposition of the two armies, and the manner in which Marshal Tallard intended to engage, wrote to his brother-in-law, the President de Maisons, telling him, that if Marshal Tallard gave the enemy battle in that position, he must infallibly be beaten. This letter was shewn to Louis XIV., and was afterwards made public.

The French army, including the Bavarians, consisted of eighty-two battalions, and one hundred and sixty squadrons, which made in all nearly sixty thousand men, the corps being then not quite complete. The allies had sixty-four battalions, and one hundred and fifty-two squadrons, in all not above fifty-two thousand men. This battle, that proved so bloody and decisive, deserves a particular attention. The French generals were accused of a number of errors ; the chief one was, the having brought themselves into the predicament of accepting a battle, instead of letting the opposing army waste itself for want of forage and provisions, and giving time to Marshal Villeroi either to fall upon the Netherlands, then in a defenceless state, or to penetrate further into Germany. But

it should be considered, in reply to this accusation, that the French army being somewhat stronger than that of the allies, might hope for the victory, which indeed would have infallibly dethroned the emperor. The Marquis de Feaquieres reckons up no less than twelve capital faults committed by the elector, Marsin, and Tallard, before and after the battle ; one of the most considerable was, the not having placed a large body of foot in their centre, and having separated the two bodies of the army. Marshal Villars has often been heard to say, that this disposition was unpardonable.

Marshal Tallard was at the head of the right wing, and the elector with Marsin at the left. Tallard had all the impetuous and sprightly courage of a Frenchman, an active and penetrating understanding, and a genius fruitful in expedients and resources. But this general laboured under a malady of very dangerous consequences to a military man—his sight was so weak, that he could not distinguish objects at the distance of twenty paces from him. It has also been asserted by those who were well acquainted with him, that his impetuous courage, quite the reverse of the Duke of Marlborough's, growing still warmer in the heat of action, deprived him sometimes of the necessary presence of mind.

This was the first time that Marshal Marsin had commanded in chief. With much wit and a good understanding, he is said to have been rather a good general of division than an able commander-in-chief.

As to the elector of Bavaria, he was looked upon not less as a great general than as a valiant and aman-

ble prince, the darling of his subjects, and who had more magnanimity than application.

At length the battle commenced, between twelve and one o'clock in the afternoon. Marlborough, with his English, having passed a small rivulet, began the attack upon Tallard's cavalry. That general, a little before, had ridden towards the left wing, to observe its disposition. It was no small disadvantage to Tallard's corps, from the beginning, to be obliged to fight without its general at its head. The corps commanded by the elector and Marsin, had not yet been attacked by Prince Eugene. Marlborough had attacked the right of the French nearly an hour before Eugene could have come up to the elector on the left of the French.

As soon as Marshal Tallard heard that Marlborough had attacked his wing, he immediately hastened thither, where he found a furious action begun; the French cavalry rallied three times and were as often repulsed. He then went to the village of Blenheim, where he had posted twenty-seven battalions and twelve squadrons. This was a little detached army that kept a continual fire on Marlborough during the whole time he was engaged with Tallard's wing. After giving his orders in this village, he hastened back to the place where the duke, with a body of horse and battalions of foot between the squadrons, was driving the French cavalry before him.

He arrived in time only to see his cavalry routed before his face, and the victorious Marlborough forcing his way between the two bodies of the French army on one side; while on the other, his officers had got between the Village of Blenheim and Tallard's divi-

sion, which was thus separated from the corps posted in that village.

In this cruel situation, Marshal Tallard flew to rally some of the broken squadrons ; but the badness of his sight made him mistake a squadron of the enemy for one of his own, and he was taken prisoner by the Hessian troops that were in the English pay. At the very instant that the general was taken, Prince Eugene, after having been three times repulsed, at length gained the advantage. The rout now became total in Tallard's division ; every one fled with the utmost precipitation ; and so great was the terror and confusion throughout the whole wing, that officers and soldiers ran headlong into the Danube, without knowing whither they were going. There was no general officer to give orders for a retreat ; no one thought of saving those twenty-seven battalions and twelve squadrons of the best troops of France, that were so unfortunately shut up in Blenheim, or of bringing them into action. At last Marshal Marsin ordered a retreat. The Count du Bourg, afterwards marshal of France, saved a small part of the infantry by retreating over the marshes of Hochstet ; but neither he, Marsin, nor any one else thought of the corps shut up in Blenheim, waiting for orders which they never received. It consisted of eleven thousand veterans. There are many examples of less armies that have beaten others of fifty thousand men, or at least made a glorious retreat, but the nature of the position determines everything. It was impossible for them to get out of the narrow streets of a village, and range themselves in order of battle in the face of a victorious army, that would have overwhelmed them at

once with a superior front, and even with their own artillery, which had fallen into the victor's hands.

The general officer who commanded here was the Marquis of Clermont, son to the marshal of that name ; he was hastening to find out Marshal Tallard, to receive orders from him, when he was told that he was taken prisoner ; and seeing nothing but people running on all sides, he fled with them, and in fleeing was drowned in the Danube.

Brigadier Sivieres, who was posted in this village, ventured upon a bold stroke ; he called aloud to the officers of the regiments of Artois and Provence, to follow him. Several officers, even of other regiments, obeyed the summons, and, rushing out of the village, like those who make a sally from a town that is besieged, fell upon the enemy ; but after this sally they were obliged to return back again. One of these officers, named Des Nouailles, returned some few moments afterwards, on horseback, with the Earl of Orkney. As soon as he entered the village, the rest of the officers flocked round him, inquiring if it was an English prisoner he had brought in. "No, gentlemen," replied he, "I am a prisoner myself, and am come to tell you, that you have nothing left but to surrender yourselves prisoners of war. Here is the Earl of Orkney, who is come to offer you terms." At hearing this, the veterans shuddered with horror : the regiment of Navarre tore their colours in pieces, and buried them. But at length they were compelled to yield to necessity ; and the whole corps laid down its arms without having struck a blow.

Such was this famous action, which in France was

known by the battle of Hochstet, and by the English and Germans by that of Blenheim, and which was fought on August 13, 1704. The victors had nearly five thousand killed and eight thousand wounded ; the greater part of which loss fell on the side of the Prince Eugene. The French army was almost entirely cut to pieces. Of sixty thousand men, not above twenty thousand could be collected after the engagement.

This fatal day was distinguished by the loss of twenty thousand men killed, and fourteen thousand made prisoners ; all the cannon, a prodigious number of standards, colours, tents, and equipages, with the general of the army, and twelve hundred officers of note, fell into the hands of the conquerors. The runaways dispersed themselves on all sides ; and upwards of a hundred leagues of country were lost in less than one month. The whole electorate of Bavaria, now fallen under the yoke of the emperor, experienced all the severity of Austrian resentment, and all the cruelties of a rapacious soldiery. The elector, in his way to Brussels, whither he was flying for refuge, met with his brother the elector of Cologne, who, like him, was driven out of his dominions ; they embraced each other with a flood of tears. The court of Versailles accustomed to continual successes, was struck with astonishment and confusion at this reverse. The news of the defeat arrived in the midst of the rejoicing made on account of the birth of a great grandson of Louis XIV. No one would venture to acquaint the king with the disagreeable truth. At length Madame de Maintenon undertook to let him know that he was no longer invincible.

Marlborough was rewarded by his sovereign and the parliament with a splendid palace being built for him, and named Blenheim House, near Woodstock, in Oxfordshire, and with the thanks of the two Houses of Parliament, of the cities and towns, and the general acclamation of the people, while Addison celebrated him in a poem. The emperor created him a prince of the empire, and bestowed upon him the principality of Mindelsheim.

## THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.



THE discovery of America by Columbus was one of the most wonderful events of the fifteenth century. Columbus was born in the year 1442, and went to sea at an early age. Having experienced many vicissitudes, he became one of the most skilful navigators in Europe.

At this period, the great object of discovery was, a passage by sea to the East Indies, which was accomplished by the Portuguese doubling the Cape of Good Hope.

The danger and tediousness of the passage, however, induced Columbus to consider whether a shorter and more direct passage to these regions might not be found out; and at length he became convinced that by sailing across the Atlantic directly towards the west, new countries which probably formed a part of the continent of India, must inevitably be discovered. In 1474, he communicated his ideas on this subject to one Paul, a physician of Florence, a man eminent for his knowledge of cosmography, who suggested several facts in confirmation of his plan, and warmly encouraged him to persevere.

Fully satisfied with the truth of his suppositions, Columbus was impatient to set out on his voyage of

discovery ; and he applied first to the court of Genoa, afterwards to the courts of Spain and England successively, but met with a number of mortifying disappointments. At last, however, Ferdinand of Spain and Isabella so far countenanced his project, that Columbus set sail with three small ships, the whole expense of which did not exceed £4000. During his voyage he met with many difficulties from the mutinous and timid disposition of his men.

When about 150 leagues west of Ferra, they fell in with a part of a mast of a large vessel; and the crews, tremblingly alive to every portent, looked with a rueful eye upon this fragment of a wreck, drifting ominously at the entrance of these unknown seas. On the 18th of September, in the evening, Columbus, for the first time, noticed the variation of the needle, a phenomenon which had never before been remarked. He at first made no mention it, lest his people should be alarmed, but it soon attracted the attention of the pilots, and filled them with consternation. It seemed as if the very laws of nature were changing as they advanced, and that they were entering another world, subject to unknown influences. They apprehended that the compass was about to lose its mysterious virtues, and without this guide what was to become of them in a vast and trackless ocean? Columbus tasked his science and ingenuity for reasons with which to allay their terrors. He told them that the direction of the needle was not to the polar star, but to some fixed and invisible point. The variation, therefore, was not caused by any fallacy in the compass, but by the movement of the north star.

itself, which, like the other heavenly bodies, had its changes and revolutions, and every day described a circle round the pole. The high opinion they entertained of Columbus as a profound astronomer gave weight to his theory, and their alarm subsided.

They had now arrived within the influence of the trade wind, which, following the sun, blows steadily from east to west between the tropics, and sweeps over a few adjoining degrees of the ocean. With this propitious breeze directly aft they were wafted gently but speedily over a tranquil sea, so that for many days they did not shift a sail. Columbus in his journal perpetually recurs to the bland and temperate serenity of the weather, and compares the pure and balmy mornings to those of April in Andalusia, observing that the song of the nightingale was alone wanting to complete the illusion.

They now began to see large patches of herbs and weeds all drifting from the west. Some were such as grow about rocks or in rivers, and as green as if recently washed from the land. On one of the patches was a live crab. They saw also a white tropical bird, of a kind which never sleeps upon the sea, and tunny fish played about the ships. Columbus now supposed himself arrived in the weedy sea described by Aristotle, into which certain ships of Cadiz had been driven by an impetuous east wind.

As he advanced there were various other signs that gave great animation to the crews; many birds were seen flying from the west; there was a cloudiness in the north such as often hangs over land, and at sunset the imagination of the seamen, aided by their desires, would shape those clouds into distant islands.

Every one was eager to be the first to behold and announce the wished-for shore, for the sovereigns had promised a pension of thirty crowns to whomsoever should first discover land. Columbus sounded occasionally with a line of 200 fathoms, but found no bottom. Martin Alonzo Pinzon, as well as others of his officers, and many of the seamen, were often solicitous for Columbus to alter his course, and steer in the direction of these favourable signs, but he persevered in steering to the westward, trusting that by keeping in one steady direction he should reach the coast of India, even if he should miss the intervening islands, and might then seek them on his return.

On the morning of the 7th of October, at sun-rise, several of the admiral's crew thought they beheld land in the west, but so indistinctly that no one ventured to proclaim it, lest he should be mistaken, and forfeit all chance of the reward; the Nina, however, being a good sailer, pressed forward to ascertain the fact. In a little while the flag was hoisted at her mast-head, and a gun discharged, being the preconcerted signals for land. New joy was awakened throughout the little squadron, and every eye was turned to the west. As they advanced, however, their cloud-built hopes faded away, and before evening the promised land had again melted into air.

The crews now sank into a degree of dejection proportioned to their recent excitement, when new circumstances occurred to arouse them. Columbus having observed great flights of small field-birds going towards the south-west, concluded they must be secure of some neighbouring land, where they would

find food and a resting place. He knew the importance which the Portuguese voyagers attached to the flight of birds, by following which they had discovered most of their islands. He had now come seven hundred and fifty leagues, the distance at which he had computed to find the island of Cipango; as there was no appearance of it, he might have missed it through some mistake in the latitude.

Columbus determined, therefore, on the evening of the 7th of October, to alter his course to the south-west, the direction in which the birds generally flew, and continue that direction for at least two days. After all, it was no great deviation from his main course, and would meet the wishes of the Pinzons as well as be inspiriting to his followers generally. For three days they stood in this direction, and the further they went the more frequent and encouraging were the signs of land. Flights of small birds of various colours, some of them such as sing in the fields, came flying about the ships, and then continued towards the south-west, and others were heard also flying by in the night. Other tunny fish played about the smooth sea; and a heron, a pelican, and a duck were seen, all bound in the same direction. The herbage which floated by the ships was fresh and green, as if recently from land, and the air, Columbus observes, was sweet and fragrant as April breezes in Seville.

All these appearances, however, were regarded by the crew as so many delusions beguiling them on to destruction; and when, on the evening of the third day, they beheld the sun go down upon a shoreless horizon, they broke forth into clamorous turbulence.

They exclaimed against this obstinacy in tempting fate by continuing on into a boundless sea. They insisted upon turning homeward, and abandoning the voyage as hopeless.

Columbus endeavoured to pacify them by gentle words and promises of large rewards ; but finding that they only increased in clamour, he assumed a decided tone. He told them it was useless to murmur ; the expedition had been sent by the sovereigns to seek the Indies, and happen what might he was determined to persevere, until, by the blessing of God, he should accomplish the enterprise.

Columbus was now at open defiance with his crew, and his situation became desperate. Fortunately, however, the manifestations of neighbouring land were such, on the following day, as no longer to admit a doubt. Besides a quantity of fresh weeds, such as grow in rivers; they saw a green fish, of a kind which keeps about rocks ; then a branch of thorn with berries on it, and recently separated from the tree, floated by them ; then they picked up a reed, a small board, and, above all, a staff artificially carved. All gloom and mutiny now gave way to sanguine expectation ; and throughout the day each one was eagerly on the watch in hopes of being the first to discover the long-sought for land.

In the evening when, according to invariable custom on board of the admiral's ship, the mariners had sung the Salve Regina, or vesper hymn to the Virgin, he made an impressive address to his crew. He pointed out the goodness of God in thus conducting them by such soft and favouring breezes across a tranquil ocean, cheering their hopes continually with

fresh signs, increasing as their fears augmented, and thus leading and guiding them to a promised land. He now reminded them of the orders he had given on leaving the Canaries ; that, after sailing westward seven hundred leagues, they should not make sail after midnight. Present appearances authorised such a precaution. He thought it probable they would make land that very night ; he ordered, therefore, a vigilant look-out to be kept from the fore-  
castle, promising to whomsoever should make the discovery, a doublet of velvet, in addition to the pension to be given by the sovereigns.

The breeze had been fresh all day, with more sea than usual, and they had made great progress. At sunset they had stood again to the west, and were ploughing the waves at a rapid rate, the Pinta keeping the lead from her superior sailing. The greatest animation prevailed throughout the ships ; not an eye was closed that night. As the evening darkened, Columbus took his station at the top of the castle, or cabin, on the high poop of his vessel. However he might carry a cheerful and confident countenance during the day, it was to him a time of the most painful anxiety ; and now, when he was wrapped from observation by the shades of night, he maintained an intense and unremitting watch, ranging his eye along the dusky horizon, in search of the most vague indications of land.

Suddenly, about ten o'clock, he thought he beheld a light glimmering at a distance. Fearing that his eager hopes might deceive him, he called to Pedro Gutierrez, gentleman of the king's bed-chamber, and inquired whether he saw a light in that direction ;

the latter replied in the affirmative. Columbus, yet doubtful whether it might not be a delusion of the fancy, called Rodrigo Sanchez of Segovia, and made the same inquiry. By the time the latter had ascended the round-house, the light had disappeared. They saw it once or twice afterwards in sudden and passing gleams, as if it were a torch in the bark of a fisherman, rising and sinking with the waves ; or in the hand of some person on shore, borne up and down as he walked from house to house.

So transient and uncertain were these gleams, that few attached any importance to them ; Columbus, however, considered them as certain signs of land ; and, moreover, that the land was inhabited. They continued their course until two in the morning, when a gun from the Pinta gave the joyful signal of land. It was first discovered by a mariner named Rodrigo de Iriana ; but the reward was afterwards adjudged to the admiral, for having previously perceived the light. The land was now clearly seen about two leagues distant, whereupon they took in sail and laid to, waiting patiently for the dawn.

The thoughts and feelings of Columbus, in this little space of time, must have been tumultuous and intense. At length, in spite of every difficulty and danger, he had accomplished his object. The great mystery of the ocean was revealed ; his theory, which had been the scoff of sages, was triumphantly established : he had secured to himself a glory which must be as durable as the world itself. It is difficult, even for the imagination, to conceive the feelings of such a man, at the moment of so sublime a discovery. What a bewildering crowd of conjectures

must have thronged upon his mind, as to the land which lay before him covered with darkness ! That it was fruitful was evident from the vegetables which floated from its shores. He thought, too, that he perceived in the balmy air all the fragrance of aromatic groves. But what were its inhabitants ? Were they like those of the other parts of the globe ? or were they some strange and monstrous race, such as the imagination in those times was prone to give to all remote and unknown regions ? Had he come upon some wild island far in the Indian Sea ? Or was this the famed Cipango itself, the object of his golden fancies ? A thousand speculations of the kind must have swarmed upon him, as, with his anxious crews, he waited for the night to pass away, wondering whether the morning light would reveal a savage wilderness, or dawn upon spicy groves, and glittering fanes, and gilded cities, and all the splendour of oriental civilization.

It was on the morning of Friday, 12th October, 1492, that Columbus first beheld the New World. When the day dawned, he saw before him a level and beautiful island, several leagues in extent, of great freshness and verdure, and covered with trees like a continual orchard. Though every thing appeared in the wild luxuriance of untamed nature, yet the island was populous, for the inhabitants were seen issuing from the woods, and running from all parts to the shore, where they stood gazing at the ships. They were perfectly naked ; and from their attitudes and gestures appeared to be lost in astonishment. Columbus made a signal for the ships to cast anchor, and the boats to be manned and armed.

Columbus entered his own boat, richly attired in scarlet, and bearing the royal standard; whilst Martin Alonzo Pinzon, and Vincent Janez, his brother, put off in company in their boats, each bearing the banner of the enterprise, emblazoned with a green cross, having on each side the letters F and I., the initials of the Castilian monarchs, Fernando and Isabel, surmounted by crowns. As they approached the shores, they were refreshed by the sight of the ample forests, which, in those climates, have extraordinary beauty of vegetation. They beheld fruits of tempting hue, but unknown kind, growing among the trees which overhung the shores. The purity and suavity of the atmosphere, the crystal transparency of the seas which bathe these islands, give them a wonderful beauty, and must have had their effect upon the susceptible feelings of Columbus.

No sooner did he land, than he threw himself upon his knees, kissed the earth, and returned thanks to God with tears of joy. His example was followed by the rest, whose hearts indeed overflowed with the same feelings of gratitude. Columbus, then rising, drew his sword, displayed the royal standard, and, assembling round him the two captains, with Rodrigo de Escobedo, notary of the armament, Rodrigo Sanchez, and the rest who had landed, he took solemn possession in the name of the Castilian sovereigns, giving the island the name of San Salvador.

Having complied with the requisite forms and ceremonies, he now called upon all present to take the oath of obedience to him as admiral and viceroy, representing the persons of the sovereigns. The feelings of the crew now burst forth in the most

extravagant transports. They had recently considered themselves devoted men, hurrying forward to destruction ; they now looked upon themselves as favourites of fortune, and gave themselves up to the most unbounded joy. They thronged around the admiral in their overflowing zeal : some embraced him, others kissed his hands. Those who had been most mutinous and turbulent during the voyage, were now most devoted and enthusiastic. Some begged favours of him, as of a man who had already wealth and honours in his gift. Many abject spirits, who had outraged him by their insolence, now crouched, as it were, at his feet, begging pardon for all the trouble they had caused him, and offering, for the future, the blindest obedience to his commands.

The natives of the island, when, at the dawn of day, they had beheld the ships, with their sails set, hovering on their coasts, had supposed them some monsters which had issued from the deep during the night. They had crowded to the beach, and watched their movements with awful anxiety. Their veering about, apparently without effort, the shifting and furling of their sails, resembling huge wings, filled them with astonishment. When they beheld their boats approach the shore, and a number of strange beings clad in glittering steel, or raiment of various colours, landing upon the beach, they fled in affright to their woods.

Finding, however, that there was no attempt to pursue, nor molest them, they gradually recovered from their terror, and approached the Spaniards with great awe, frequently prostrating themselves on the earth, and making signs of adoration. During the

ceremonies of taking possession, they remained gazing in timid admiration at the complexion, the beards, the shining armour, and splendid dress of the Spaniards. The admiral particularly attracted their attention, from his commanding height, his air of authority, his dress of scarlet, and the deference which was paid him by his companions; all which pointed him out to be the commander.

When they had still further recovered from their fears, they approached the Spaniards, touched their beards, and examined their hands and faces, admiring their whiteness. Columbus, pleased with their simplicity, their gentleness, and the confidence they reposed in beings who must have appeared to them so strange and formidable, suffered their scrutiny with perfect acquiescence. The wondering savages were won by this benignity; they now supposed that the ships had sailed out of the crystal firmament which bounded their horizon; or that they had descended from above on their ample wings, and that these marvellous beings were inhabitants of the skies.

The land which Columbus had discovered was part of the island of San Salvador, one of the Bahamas; and having visited several of the other West India islands, and settled a colony in Hispanola, he again set sail for Spain; and after escaping great danger from violent tempests, arrived at the port of Palos on the 15th of March, 1493.

## CONQUEST OF MEXICO BY FERNANDO CORTEZ.

1519.



It was only twenty-six years after the discovery of America by Columbus, that an event fraught with the utmost consequences to Europe, occurred in the New World, which had been discovered by Columbus in the preceding century. This was the conquest of Mexico by Fernando

Cortez, an achievement which will form an interesting subject for study and reflection.

Velasquez, governor of the island of Cuba, with the intention of signalizing his administration by some discoveries, fitted out a small expedition, which he confided to the command of Fernando Cortez; and that gallant soldier is said to have accomplished what appears too bold even for fiction—the overthrow of an empire that could send millions into the field, with no greater force than six hundred men, eighteen horses, and a few pieces of artillery. He was at first lucky enough to meet with a Spaniard, who, having been nine years a prisoner at Yucatan, a town on the route to Mexico, served him as an interpreter, and

he also attached himself to a beautiful American, named Mariana, who soon learned the Castilian language, and became his mistress and his counsellor. To complete his good fortune, he discovered a volcano full of sulphur, as well as a mine of saltpetre, and thus secured a constant supply of ammunition.

Encouraged by these fortunate circumstances, Cortez advanced along the coasts of the Gulf of Mexico, at one time gaining over the natives by kindness, at another subduing them by force of arms. As he progressed he found, to his astonishment, many populous towns, in which the arts were fostered and protected. The powerful republic of Tlascala, which was flourishing under an aristocratical government, opposed his passage ; but the sight of his horses, and the thunder alone of his artillery, put to flight the ill-armed multitudes which endeavoured to arrest his march. Thus practically convinced of the mighty superiority of the invader, the Tlascalans eagerly entered into a treaty with Cortez, and became useful and faithful allies.

The Spaniard now entered the dominions of Montezuma, the Mexican emperor, without experiencing the least resistance, and had not proceeded above two or three days' march when he was met by ambassadors from the prince, who endeavoured by magnificent presents to induce the invaders to depart from their coast. The delay occasioned by this embassy was very opportune. Had an army, instead of negotiators, met him on his first landing, the ruin of Cortez would have been almost inevitable. He replied to the envoys, that he was but an ambassador himself, and, as such, it was his duty, ere he departed,

to have an audience of the emperor. This answer disconcerted Montezuma's ambassadors, and upon its being made known to the monarch, he became alarmed, and redoubled his presents ; but these, as well as persuasion, were fruitless. Cortez remaining resolute, the ambassadors at length employed threats, and boasted of the military and pecuniary resources of their country.

"These," said Cortez, turning to his companions, "these are what we seek ; great perils and great riches." In fact, what stronger incentives could have been administered to the chivalric spirit and the cupidity of a band of needy adventurers ? Their leader saw conquest in their looks ; and having now received the necessary information, and prepared himself against all hazards, he boldly marched toward the seat of empire, and advanced uninterrupted to the gates of Mexico.

The city of Mexico, built in the midst of a large lake, was the finest monument of American art : immense causeways intersected the lake, which seemed covered with small boats made of the trunks of trees. In the town itself were spacious and commodious houses built of stone, markets and shops resplendent and glittering with articles of luxury, manufactured of gold and silver, sculpture, porcelain beautifully varnished, cotton stuffs, and cloth woven with feathers of the most brilliant hues. Near the principal market was a palace, wherein justice was publicly administered to the merchants and traders. Several other palaces belonging to Montezuma increased the splendour of the town. One of these stood upon columns of jasper, being appropriated for

the reception of curiosities of every description. Another was filled with weapons offensive and defensive, enriched with precious stones ; a third was surrounded by vast gardens, in which nothing but medicinal herbs were cultivated ; persons properly qualified distributed them to the sick ; the result of their application was reported to the king, and the physicians kept a register of them, in a manner peculiar to a country in which the art of writing was not known.

The pompous descriptions which have been given of this city by the Spanish historians, must, however, be received with some caution. The mechanical arts could not have been carried to great perfection in a country where the use of iron was unknown ; nor could the sciences or liberal arts be cultivated with success among a people ignorant of letters. The hieroglyphics, which the Mexicans are said to have used for the communication of their ideas, could but imperfectly answer that end, in comparison with general signs or symbols ; and without an easy method of recording past events, society can never make considerable progress. The ferocious religion of the Mexicans is another proof of their barbarity. Human blood was profusely shed upon the altars of the Mexican gods ; nay, (according to the most respectable Spanish historians), human flesh was greedily devoured both by the priests and people.

The ambassadors of Montezuma assured Cortez that their master had, during his wars, sacrificed before the idol Visiliputali, in the grand Temple of Mexico, twenty thousand enemies yearly ; but this is, no doubt, an exaggeration invented by the Spa-

niards for the purpose of rendering the atrocities of the conqueror of Montezuma less frightful by the contrast. It is, however, certain, that when the Spaniards entered that temple, they found human skulls suspended from the walls and the roof by way of trophies.

The invaders having arrived before Mexico, Montezuma was struck with terror and irresolution. That mighty emperor, whose treasures were immense, and whose sway was absolute—who was lord over thirty princes, each of whom could bring a numerous army into the field—was so intimidated by the defeat of the Tlascalans, that he wanted resolution to strike a blow in defence of his dignity. The haughty potentate who had ordered Cortez to depart from his coast, introduced him into his capital. Instead of making use of force, he had recourse to perfidy ; for while he professed friendship to the Spanish general, he sent an army to attack the Spanish colony, newly settled at Vera Cruz, and yet in a feeble condition. Cortez received due intelligence of this breach of faith, and took one of the boldest resolutions ever formed by man. He immediately proceeded to the imperial palace, accompanied by five of his principal officers ; arrested Montezuma as his prisoner ; carried him off to the Spanish quarters; compelled him to deliver up to punishment the officer who had acted by his orders, and to acknowledge himself, publicly, in the seat of his power, the vassal of the king of Spain.

Montezuma, and the chiefs of the empire, then delivered to Cortez, as the tribute annexed to their homage, six hundred thousand marks of pure gold, together with an incredible quantity of jewels, and

pieces of exquisite workmanship in gold, with whatever the industry of several ages had executed of most rare and valuable. Cortez reserved a fifth part of these treasures for the use of his master, kept another fifth for himself, and divided the rest among his soldiers.

It is a matter worthy of remark, that notwithstanding the mutual jealousies and divisions which reigned among the conquerors of the New World, and which were carried to the greatest extremes, their conquests never suffered. Never did truth wear so little an appearance of probability. While Cortez was subduing the empire of Mexico with five hundred men, which were all he had left, Velasquez, the governor of Cuba, more offended at the reputation which his lieutenant had gained than at his want of submission to his authority, sent almost all the troops he had under his command, which consisted of eight hundred foot, and eighty horsemen, well mounted, together with two small pieces of cannon, to reduce Cortez, and take him prisoner, and afterwards to pursue the plan of his victories.

Cortez, who had now a thousand of his own countrymen to fight against and the whole continent to keep in subjection, left eighty of his people to take care of the kingdom of Mexico, and marched with the rest to give battle to those whom Velasquez had sent against him. He defeated one part, and found means to gain over the rest. In short, this little army, which came bent upon his destruction, enlisted under his standard, and he led them back to Mexico.

The emperor was still confined in prison, guarded by the eighty men, whom Cortez had left behind in

the city. Alvaredo, the name of the officer who commanded them, on a false report that the Mexicans had formed a conspiracy to deliver their emperor, took the opportunity of a public festival, while two thousand of the principal lords of the kingdom were drowned in the excess of strong liquors, to fall upon them with fifty of his solders, who murdered them and all their attendants, without the least resistance ; after which he stripped them of all the gold ornaments and jewels with which they had decked themselves upon this public occasion. This enormous outrage, which was justly imputed to a villainous avarice, effectually roused these too patient people, who instantly revolted against their perfidious conquerors ; and when Cortez arrived at Mexico, he found two hundred thousand Americans in arms against his eighty Spaniards, who with difficulty defended themselves and kept the emperor in their custody. The Mexicans besieged Cortez in his quarters, resolved to deliver their prince, and without the least regard to their lives rushed in crowds upon the cannon and small arms, which made a dreadful slaughter among them. Montezuma judged this a favourable opportunity for obtaining his freedom and the departure of the Spaniards. On those conditions, he consented to employ his good offices with the people. He shewed himself on the ramparts, clad in his royal robe, and endeavoured to induce the multitude to retire. They at first seemed overawed by the presence of their sovereign, and ready to obey his commands, but suddenly recollecting the pusillanimity of his behaviour, their love was changed into hate, their veneration into con-

tempt, and a stone, launched by an indignant hand, at once deprived Montezuma of empire and of life.

That accident gave sincere concern to Cortez, and was a real misfortune to the Spaniards. The successor of Montezuma was a fierce and warlike prince, resolutely determined to support the independence of his country. Cortez, after several ineffectual struggles, found himself under the necessity of quitting the city. The Mexicans harassed him in his retreat, took from him all his baggage and treasure, and engaged him in the field with an army astonishingly numerous ; the ensigns of various nations waved in the air, and the imperial standard of massy gold was displayed. Now was the time for heroism, and stronger proofs of it were never exhibited than in the valley of Otumba. "Death or victory !" was the war-cry and the resolution of every Spaniard. The Mexicans were soon thrown into confusion, and a terrible slaughter ensued ; but fresh crowds still pressing on, supplied the place of the slain, and the Spaniards must have sunk under the fatigue of continual fighting, had not Cortez, by a happy presence of mind, put an end to the dispute, and rendered the victory decisive. He rushed at the head of his cavalry towards the imperial standard, closed with the Mexican general who commanded it, and at one stroke of his lance hurled him from his litter. The standard was seized, and the consequence proved as Cortez had expected : the Mexicans threw down their arms, and fled with precipitation and terror.

This victory, and the assistance of the Tlascalans, encouraged Cortez to undertake the siege of Mexico, and another fortunate circumstance enabled him to

complete his conquest. The new emperor Guatimozon was taken prisoner in attempting to escape out of his capital, in order to arouse to arms the distant provinces of his dominions. The metropolis surrendered, and the whole empire submitted to the Spaniards.

## EXPEDITION AGAINST ALGIERS.

1541.



THE expedition of Charles V., Emperor of Germany, against Algiers, was one of the most disastrous occurrences of the age. It was undertaken for no other purpose than a love of military conquest, and it ended as such expeditions deserve to do.

Algiers was at this time governed by Hascen-Aga, a renegado eunuch, who carried on his piratical depredations against the Christian states with amazing activity, and outdid, if possible, his predecessor Barbarossa himself in boldness and cruelty.

The commerce of the Mediterranean was greatly interrupted by his cruisers, and such frequent alarms given to the coasts of Spain, that there was a necessity of erecting watch-towers at proper distances, and of keeping guards constantly on foot, in order to descry the approach of his squadrons, and to protect the inhabitants from their descents. Of this the emperor's subjects had long complained, representing it as an enterprise corresponding to his power, and

becoming his humanity, to reduce Algiers, which, since the conquest of Tunis, was the common receptacle of all the freebooters ; and to exterminate that lawless nation, the implacable enemies of the human race.

Moved partly by their entreaties, and partly allure<sup>d</sup> by the hope of adding to the glory which he had acquired by his last expedition into Africa, Charles issued orders both in Spain and Italy to prepare a fleet and army for that purpose ; and so firm was he in his resolution, that, notwithstanding the advice of Andrew Doria, who entreated him not to expose his whole armament to the hazard of destruction by venturing, at so late a season, to approach the stormy coast of Algiers, he embarked on board Doria's galleys at Porto-Venere, in the Genoese territories. He soon found that this experienced sailor had not judged wrong concerning the element with which he was so well acquainted ; for such a storm arose that it was with the utmost difficulty and danger he reached Sardinia, the place of general rendezvous.

But as the emperor's courage was undaunted, and his temper often inflexible, neither the remonstrances of the Pope and Doria, nor the danger to which he had already been exposed by disregarding them, had any other effect than to confirm him in his fatal resolution. His force consisted of twenty thousand foot, two thousand horse, Spaniards, Italians, and Germans, mostly veterans, together with three thousand volunteers, the flower of the Spanish and Italian nobility ; to these were added a thousand soldiers, sent from Malta by the order of St. John, and headed by a hundred of its most gallant knights.

After a tedious and dangerous voyage from Majorca to the African coast, the emperor landed, without opposition, not far from Algiers, and immediately advanced towards the town. To oppose this mighty army, Hascen had only eight hundred Turks, and five thousand Moors, partly natives of Africa and partly refugees from Grenada. He returned, however, a fierce and haughty answer when summoned to surrender. But with such a handful of soldiers, neither his desperate courage, nor consummate skill in war, could have long resisted the forces now brought against him.

But, howsoever far the emperor might think himself beyond the reach of any danger from the enemy, he was suddenly exposed to a more dreadful calamity, and one against which human prudence and human efforts availed nothing. On the second day after his landing, and before he had time for anything but to disperse some light-armed Arabs who molested his troops on their march, the clouds began to gather, and the heavens to appear with a fierce and threatening aspect.

Towards evening rain began to fall, accompanied with violent wind, and the rage of the tempest increasing during the night, the soldiers, who had brought nothing on shore but their arms, remained exposed to all its fury, without tents, shelter, or cover of any kind. The ground was soon so wet that they could not lie down on it; their camp being in a low situation was overflowed with water, and they sunk at every step to the ankles in mud; while the wind blew with such impetuosity, that, to prevent their falling, they were obliged to thrust their spears into

the ground, and to support themselves by taking hold of them.

Hascen was too vigilant an officer to allow an enemy in such distress to remain unmolested. About the dawn of morning he sallied out with his soldiers, who, having been screened from the storm under their own roofs, were fresh and vigorous. A body of Italians who were stationed nearest the city, dispirited and benumbed with cold, fled at the approach of the Turks. The troops at the post behind them, discovered greater courage, but as the rain had extinguished their matches and wetted their powder, their musquets were useless, and having scarcely strength to handle their other arms, they were soon thrown into confusion. Almost the whole army, with the emperor himself in person, was obliged to advance before the enemy could be repulsed, who, after spreading such general consternation, and killing a considerable number of men, retired at last in good order.

But all feeling or remembrance of this loss and danger were quickly obliterated by a more dreadful as well as affecting spectacle. It was now broad day, the hurricane had abated nothing of its violence, and the sea appeared agitated with all the rage of which that destructive element is capable; all the ships, on which alone the whole army knew their safety and subsistence depended, were seen driven from their anchors, some dashing against each other, some beat to pieces on the rocks, many forced ashore, and not a few sinking in the waves.

In less than an hour fifteen ships of war, and a hundred and forty transports, with eight thousand men,

perished ; and such of the unhappy crews as escaped the fury of the sea were murdered without mercy by the Arabs, as soon as they reached land. The emperor stood in silent anguish and astonishment beholding this fatal event, which at once blasted all his hopes of success, and buried in the depths of the ocean the vast stores which he had provided, as well for annoying the enemy, as for subsisting his own troops. He had it not in his power to afford them any other assistance or relief than by sending some troops to drive away the Arabs, and thus delivering a few who were so fortunate as to get ashore, from the cruel fate which their companions had met with.

At last the wind began to fall, and to give some hopes that sufficient ships might escape to save the army from perishing by famine, and transport them back to Europe. But these were only hopes ; the approach of evening covered the sea with darkness ; and it being impossible for the officers aboard the ships which had outlived the storm to send any intelligence to their companions who were ashore, they remained during the night in all the anguish of suspense and uncertainty.

Next day, a boat dispatched by Doria made shift to reach land with information, that having weathered out the storm, to which, during fifty years knowledge of the sea, he had never seen any equal in fierceness and horror, he had found it necessary to bear away with his shattered ships to cape Metafuz. He advised the emperor, as the face of the sky was still lowering and tempestuous, to march with all speed to that place, where the troops could re-embark with greater ease.

The comfort which this intelligence afforded Charles, by the assurance that part of his fleet had escaped, was counterbalanced by the new cares and perplexity in which it involved him with regard to his army. Metafuz was, at least, three days' march from his present camp ; all the provisions which he had brought ashore at his first landing were now consumed ; his soldiers worn out with fatigue, were hardly capable of such a journey, even in a friendly country, and being dispirited by a succession of hardships, which victory itself would scarcely have rendered tolerable, they were in no condition to undergo new toils.

But the situation of the army was such as allowed not one moment for deliberation, nor left it in the least doubtful what to choose. They were ordered instantly to march, the wounded, the sick, and the feeble being placed in the centre ; such as seemed most vigorous were stationed in the front and rear. Then the sad effects of what they had suffered began to appear more manifestly than ever, and new calamities were added to all those which they had already endured. Some could hardly bear the weight of their arms ; others, spent with the toil of forcing their way through deep and almost impassable roads, sank down and died ; many perished by famine, as the whole army subsisted chiefly on roots and berries, or the flesh of horses, killed by the emperor's order and distributed among the several battalions ; many were drowned in brooks, which were swollen so much by the excessive rains, that in passing them they waded up to the chin ; not a few were killed by the

enemy, who, during the greater part of their retreat, alarmed, harassed, and annoyed them night and day. At last they arrived at Metafuz, and the weather being now so calm as to restore their communication with the fleet, they were supplied with plenty of provisions and cheered with the prospect of safety.

During this dreadful series of calamities, the emperor discovered great qualities, many of which an uninterrupted flow of prosperity had hitherto afforded him no opportunity of displaying. He appeared conspicuous for firmness and constancy of spirit, for magnanimity, fortitude, humanity and compassion. He endured as great hardships as the meanest soldier, he exposed his own person wherever danger threatened, he encouraged the desponding, visited the sick and wounded, and animated all by his word and example. When the army embarked, he was among the last who left the shore, although a body of Arabs hovered at no great distance, ready to fall on the rear. By these virtues Charles atoned, in some degree, for his obstinacy and presumption, in undertaking an expedition so fatal to his subjects.

The calamities which attended this unfortunate enterprise did not end here; for no sooner were the forces got on board, than a new storm arising, though less furious than the former, scattered the fleet, and obliged them, separately, to make towards such ports in Spain and Italy as they could first reach; thus spreading the account of their disasters, with all the circumstances of aggravation and horror which their fear or fancy suggested. The emperor himself, after

escaping great dangers, and being forced into the port of Bogoa, in Africa, where he was obliged by contrary winds to remain several weeks, arrived at last in Spain, worn out with fatigue, anxiety, and disappointment.

MASSACRE OF THE PROTESTANTS IN FRANCE,  
ON THE EVE OF ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S DAY.

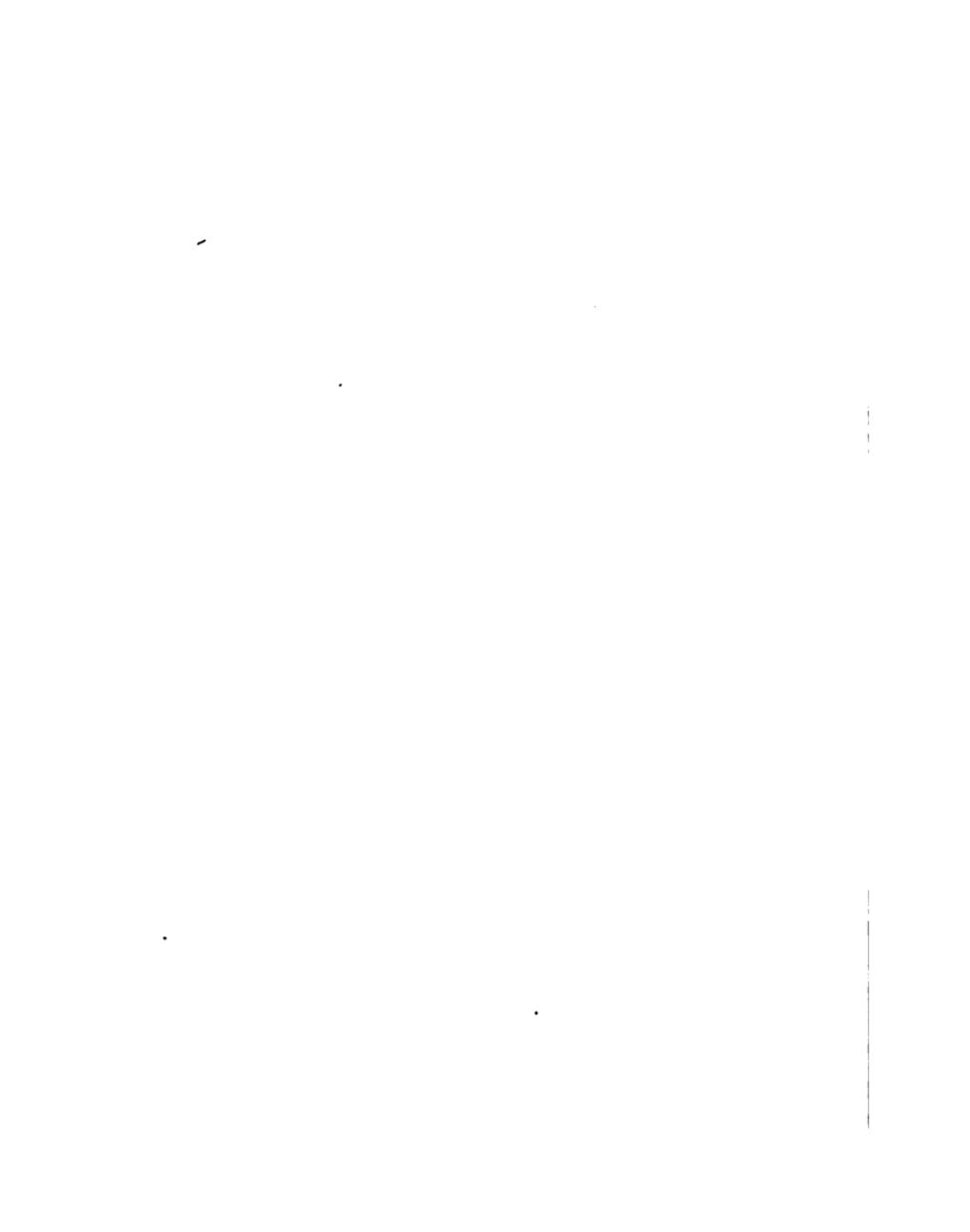
A.D. 1572.

THE civil war between the Catholics and Protestants, which had so long desolated France, was at length terminated by the treaty of Saint Germain-en-haie, in 1570. This unhoped-for peace was a triumph for the latter; but in the views of Catherine de Medicis, mother of Charles IX., it was far otherwise; she only intended it as a fatal snare, by which she might the more easily destroy by perfidy those whom she could not overcome by arms. Charles IX., well versed in the arts of dissimulation, and inclined to cruelty, although only twenty years of age, seconded his mother with the utmost satisfaction and readiness, disguising the most atrocious wickedness under the fairest appearances.

In order to allure to court the chiefs of the Protestant party, the king offered his sister Marguerite in marriage to the young prince of Bearne (afterwards Henry IV.) The queen of Navarre, delighted at this token of a perfect reconciliation, came in person to conclude the match, and was received with the greatest mark of respect and kindness. Charles IX. had taken a solemn oath that he would draw into the snare all the chiefs of the reformed religion; and although he found some difficulty in entrapping the illustrious Admiral Coligni, he at length succeeded, by holding out to him as a lure the command of an



MASSACRE OF ST. BARTHOLOMEW.



army, which it was proposed should march into Flanders.

In the mean time a premature death carried off the queen of Navarre, nor is there any doubt that she was poisoned. Her son, the prince of Bearne, then in his nineteenth year, and his cousin, the young prince of Condé, at length arrived at court, and on the 17th of August, 1572, the marriage of the king of Navarre with Marguerite de Valois was solemnized. The following days were past in the midst of feastings and rejoicings; all animosity appeared extinguished, but the flame was only smouldering.

It was resolved to massacre in one night, if possible, all the chiefs of the Protestant party. Admiral Coligni, after being present at a game of tennis, in which the king took a part, was wounded by an arquebuss shot, as he was going home on foot, on the 22nd of August, about eleven o'clock in the morning. Charles here showed his profound dissimulation: he went to visit Coligni, expressed the utmost anxiety for the circumstance, and promised him signal vengeance. The court thus found means to calm the apprehensions of the Protestants, and to keep every thing quiet until the eve of St. Bartholomew, the day fixed by Catherine and the secret council of Charles for the massacre.

The Duke de Guise was entrusted with the execution ; and this horrible butchery, which for diabolical wickedness has no parallel in history, began on the night of the 23-24 of August. All the Protestants, without distinction either of age or sex, had been condemned to destruction, and Coligni was marked out for the first victim. Guise; at the head of his

satellites, hurried before day-break to the admiral's residence, and having, himself, caused the doors to be broken open, ordered the immediate destruction of his enemy. His commands were soon obeyed, and the yet bleeding body of the unfortunate Coligni was thrown at his feet. This sight redoubled his fury, he abandoned the corpse to the insults of the infuriated mob, and proceeded to massacre, without the least mercy, all the Calvinists who had accompanied the admiral. "Courage, soldiers," said he, "it is God, it is Medicis, it is the king, who commands you!" At the same instant the palace bell was heard to toll. It was the signal for dispatch. Numbers of noblemen and gentlemen were murdered even within the Louvre itself. The Catholics deluged Paris with blood; many, to avenge their private quarrels, stabbed the professors of their own religion, whom their hatred transformed into Huguenots. The monarch himself, forgetting his dignity and his duties, placed himself at one of the windows which looked out upon the Seine, and with a long arquebuss fired upon the unfortunates who were swimming across that river in order to escape the assassins' steel. His guards, imitating his example, killed and pillaged all whom they met, while the magistrates of the city, whose duty it was to have maintained good order and defended the lives of their fellow citizens, were the first to commit the most criminal excesses. The massacre lasted seven days; the order which had been issued throughout the kingdom to exterminate the Calvinists, was executed in several places with a like fury; so that more than sixty thousand persons were thus immolated under the pretext of religion.

The names of a few governors who courageously refused to lend themselves to so disgraceful and barbarous a deed, are gratefully remembered even in the present day. The Viscount D'Orthe wrote in answer to the mandate he received, that the garrison of Bayonne was composed of many good citizens and brave soldiers, ready to devote themselves to the king's service, but that amongst them he had never found an executioner. The bishop of Lisieux behaved himself on this occasion in a manner truly worthy of the sanctity of his character. The commandant having communicated to him the orders of the court—"You shall not execute them," said he to him, with noble resolution: "those whom you intend to murder are of my flock; they are, it is true, stray sheep, but I am endeavouring to lead them back again into the fold. The gospel nowhere says that the shepherd should shed their blood; on the contrary, I find in it the injunction, that he should lay down his life for theirs."

This horrible day, which will ever remain an indelible spot in the history of France, and which cannot be thought of without causing feelings of the deepest indignation, was followed by the greatest demonstrations of joy. The king was not ashamed to take the entire odium of it upon himself. This monster declared, in open parliament, that the massacre had been executed by his order, for the purpose of anticipating a conspiracy formed against his person. The interpreters of the laws saw only an act of prudence in this atrocious deed, and, in order to perpetuate the memory of it, caused a medal to be struck with this pompous inscription: "*Pietas armavit Jus.*

*titiam—Piety has armed Justice.*" An annual procession was also ordered, by way of returning thanks to God for the deliverance of the kingdom. At Rome, and in the countries of the Inquisition, this event was the subject of fulsome panegyrics, and was even celebrated by processions, thanksgivings, and public rejoicings.

Among the Protestants it excited such horror, that Fenelon, the French ambassador at the court of England, blushed to bear the name of Frenchman. At the first audience he had after the news had arrived of this barbarous massacre, "sorrow and indignation," he says, "were painted on every face ; a profound silence, such as is found in the darkest night, reigned throughout all the apartments of the palace ; the ladies and noblemen of the court, clad in deep mourning, were ranged in two rows, and when I passed between them, none deigned to cast the least look upon me, nor to return my salutation." Elizabeth heard him with great coolness, and replied without asperity. She contented herself with observing, that, even supposing there to have been a conspiracy of the Calvinists, it was not by slaughtering thousands of peaceful citizens that it should have been prevented ; that the persons of the chief conspirators might have been seized, and they brought before the tribunal of justice ; that assassins were not the proper executors of the law ; that she should confine herself to pitying the king for the rigour with which he had behaved towards his subjects.

Sully, the illustrious minister of Henry IV., gives the following interesting account of his own escape on that terrific day :—

"If I was inclined," says he, "to increase the general horror inspired by an action so barbarous as that perpetrated on the 24th August, 1572, I should in this place enlarge upon the number, the quality, the virtues, and great talents, of those who were inhumanly murdered on this horrible day, as well in Paris as in every part of the kingdom. I would mention at least the ignominious treatment, the fiend-like cruelty, and savage insults, these miserable victims suffered from their butchers, and which in death were a thousand times more terrible than death itself. I have documents still in my possession, which would confirm the report of the court of France having made the most pressing instances to the neighbouring courts, to follow its example with regard to the Protestants, or at least to refuse an asylum to those unfortunate people; but I prefer the honour of the nation to the satisfying a malignant pleasure, which many persons would take, in lengthening out a recital, wherein might be found the names of those who were so lost to humanity as to dip their hands in the blood of their fellow-citizens, and even of their own relations. I would, were it in my power, for ever obliterate the memory of a day that divine vengeance made France groan for, by a continued succession of miseries, blood, and terror, during six-and-twenty years; for it is not possible to judge otherwise, if all that passed from that fatal moment till the peace of 1598, be calmly considered. It is with regret that I cannot pass over what happened upon this occasion to the prince—the subject of these memoirs—and to myself.

"I was in bed, and awaked from sleep three hours after midnight, by the sound of all the bells, and the

confused cries of the populace. My tutor, St. Julian, with my valet-de-chambre, went hastily out to ascertain the cause ; and I never afterwards heard more of these men, who, without doubt, were amongst the first that were sacrificed to the popular fury. I continued alone in my chamber, dressing myself, when, in a few moments, I saw my landlord enter, pale, and in the utmost consternation. He was of the reformed religion, and having learned what the matter was, had agreed to go to mass, to save his life, and preserve his house from being pillaged. He came to persuade me to do the same, and to take me with him. I did not think proper to follow him ; but resolved to try if I could gain the college of Burgundy, where I had studied, though the great distance between the house where I then was, and the college, made the attempt very dangerous. Having disguised myself in a scholar's gown, I put a large prayer-book under my arm, and went into the street. I was seized with inexpressible horror at the sight of the ferocious murderers, who, running from all parts, forced open the houses, with cries of 'Kill, kill, massacre the Huguenots !' The blood which I saw shed before my eyes redoubled my terror. I fell into the midst of a body of guards ; they stopped me, interrogated me, and were beginning to use me ill, when, happily for me, the book that I carried was perceived, and served me for a passport. Twice after this I fell into the same danger, from which I extricated myself with the same good fortune. At last I arrived at the college of Burgundy, where a danger still greater than any I had yet met with awaited me. The porter having twice refused me entrance, I continued standing in the

midst of the street, at the mercy of the furious murderers, whose numbers increased every moment, and who were greedily seeking for their prey, when it came into my mind to ask for La Fay, the principal of the college, a good man, by whom I was tenderly beloved. The porter, prevailed upon by some small pieces of money which I put into his hand, admitted me ; and my friend carried me to his apartment, where two inhuman priests wanted to force me from him that they might cut me in pieces, saying the order was, not to spare even infants at the breast. All the good man could do was to conduct me privately to a distant chamber where he locked me up. Here I was confined three days, uncertain of my destiny, and saw no one but a servant of my friend's, who came from time to time to bring me provisions.

"At the end of these three days the prohibition for murdering and pillaging any more of the Protestants being published, I was suffered to leave my hiding-place ; and immediately after I saw Ferriere and La Vieille, two soldiers in my father's service, enter the college. They were armed, and came no doubt to rescue me by force wherever they should find me. They gave my father a relation of what had happened to me ; and eight days afterwards I received a letter from him, in which he expressed the fears he had suffered on my account, and advised me to continue in Paris, since the prince I served was not at liberty to quit it. He added, that to avoid exposing myself to an evident danger, it was necessary I should resolve to follow that prince's example, and go to mass. In fact, the king of Navarre had no other means of saving his life. He was awaked with the prince of

Condé two hours before day, by a great number of soldiers who rushed boldly into the chamber in the Louvre where they lay, and insolently commanded them to dress themselves and attend the king. They would not suffer the two princes to take their swords with them, who, as they passed, beheld several of their gentlemen massacred before their eyes. The king waited for them, and received them with a countenance and looks in which fury was visibly painted; he ordered them, with the oaths and blasphemies so familiar to him, to abjure a religion that had been only taken up, he told them, to serve for a cloak to their rebellion. The condition to which these princes were reduced could not hinder them from discovering the regret they should find in obeying him. The king, transported with anger, told them in a fierce and haughty tone, 'that he would no longer be contradicted in his opinions by his subjects; that they, by their example, should teach others to revere him as the image of God, and cease to be enemies to the images of the mother of Christ.' He ended by declaring, that if they did not go to mass, he would treat them as criminals guilty of treason against divine and human majesty. The manner in which these words were pronounced, not suffering the princes to doubt their sincerity, they yielded to necessity, and performed what was required of them."

It appears that the number of Protestants thus murdered in cold blood, during eight days, all over the kingdom, amounted to seventy-five thousand. It was not long, however, before Charles felt the most violent remorse for the barbarous action to which he had been forced to give the sanction of his name

and authority. From the evening of the 24th August, he was observed to groan involuntarily at the recital of a thousand acts of cruelty, which every one boasted of in his presence. Of all those who were about the person of this prince, none possessed so great a share of his confidence as Ambrose Pare, his surgeon. This man, though a Huguenot, lived with him in so great a degree of familiarity, that, soon after the massacre, the king took him aside, and disclosed to him freely the trouble of his soul. "Ambrose," said he, "I know not what has happened to me these two or three days past, but I feel my mind and body as much at enmity with each other as if I was seized with a fever. Sleeping or waking the murdered Huguenots seem ever present to my eyes, with ghastly faces and weltering in blood. I wish the innocent and helpless had been spared." The order which was published the following day, forbidding the continuance of the massacre, was in consequence of this conversation.

Charles died at the Castle of Vincennes, at the age of twenty-three, in the most exquisite tortures, arising, no doubt, from his awakened conscience. It is painful to contemplate these scenes; and we ought to be daily thankful to Almighty God, that we live in a country and in an age where religious fanaticism is deprived of the power of doing such atrocious acts of wickedness.

**ABJURATION OF HENRY IV. OF FRANCE, AND  
HIS ASSASSINATION BY RAVAILLAC.**



FRANCE had for a long time been desolated by the quarrel between the Catholics and the Huguenots, or Protestants. At the head of the former faction were the Guises, of the latter Henry IV., King of Navarre, which at that time was a separate kingdom.

All the provinces were inundated with blood ; the towns were taken and then retaken by either party, and the fields laid waste ; while continual skirmishes exterminated the nobility, and depopulated the kingdom. In this violent crisis of the state, Paris was the centre of discord.

The religion which Henry professed was a pretext for many of his rebellious subjects in their endeavours to foment political troubles ; for which reason several of the king's best friends, and even Rosny himself, (afterwards the Duke of Sully) although a Calvinist, advised their master to embrace the Roman Communion. "The canon—cannon—of the mass," said they, "will be the best for bringing the rebel

to subjection. The Protestant ministers had assured Henry that his salvation might be effected in the Catholic Church. Since, therefore, he found his conscientious scruples removed, he determined to be directed in this affair by sound policy. "Paris," said he, one day, when in a joking mood, "Paris is well worth a mass."

All the court repaired to St. Denis, in which was to be performed the ceremony of his abjuration, the procession being conducted with considerable pomp and splendour. The streets were carpeted and strown with flowers. The people made the air re-echo with acclamations and cries of "Long live the king!" The fair sex, shedding tears of joy, exclaimed, "May God bless him, and conduct him soon into our church of Notre Dame!" Upon entering that of Saint Denis, he found the Archbishop of Bourges, in his pontifical habit, seated in an arm-chair, covered with white damask, having the arms of France embroidered upon it; and by the side of this prelate, who in this ceremony performed the functions of great almoner, the Cardinal de Bourbon, and several bishops and monks belonging to the abbey, who waited for him with the cross, the holy gospel, and the holy water. The king having approached, the archbishop asked him, "Who are you?" "I am the king," replied Henry. "What is your request?" "I ask to be admitted into the bosom of the Holy, Catholic, Apostolic, and Roman Church." "Do you desire it sincerely?" "Yes, I will and desire it." At the same time, kneeling down, he made a profession of faith in these terms:—"I swear and protest, in the face of Almighty God, to live and die in the faith of the Ca-

tholic, Apostolic, and Roman religion, and to protect and defend it against all persons whomsoever, at the peril of my blood and life, renouncing all heresies contrary to the same." He then delivered into the archbishop's hand, a paper upon which this profession of faith was written, and signed with his own hand. Raising up the king, the prelate gave him his ring to kiss, pronounced his absolution, gave him his benediction, and embraced him.

Towards the commencement of the autumn of the year 1601, Henry being then at Calais, Elizabeth wrote to him the most flattering letters, and requested that she might have an interview with him, assuring him that if he would acquiesce in her wish, she was resolved, notwithstanding her advanced age, to embark and to proceed half-way over the Channel between Dover and Calais in order to meet him, if he would perform the other half. The king made various excuses,—first, his anxiety for the health of the Queen of England; then, that it would be wrong in him to expose her to the uncertainty of a sea voyage; next, the urgency of public business, which required his presence in Paris; then, that he was not in a fit condition to appear before her, having only come to Calais in his travelling attire, &c., &c. But the secret reasons were the affection he had for his consort, Mary de Medicis, and by whom he was also tenderly beloved, who would have suffered the greatest uneasiness had she known that the king had gone to sea. In addition to this, we are assured by an historian, Gregorio Leti, that this great prince, so courageous upon land, was extremely fearful of the sea. The eagerness, also, manifested by Elizabeth for this inter-

view, made him suspect some hidden design. The king was not alone in these surmises, for as soon as the foreign courts had intelligence of this invitation, the politicians said that there was no doubt but that Elizabeth intended playing Henry some trick, and that, knowing that Francis I. had been blamed for not retaining Charles a prisoner, she would have profited by this fault, and have kept Henry IV. prisoner until he had given up Calais to her.

During the winter and in the spring of 1610, Henry actively employed himself in putting the finishing hand to all his<sup>1</sup> preparations for a campaign. The army he raised amounted to forty thousand men, commanded by officers of great experience, exclusive of six thousand Swiss, who were sent to join them on the frontiers, and four thousand of the nobility, who were to attend the king to the army, which was to assemble at Chalons about the middle of May. The negotiations requisite for the general league were conducted with so much silence, that the first circumstance that transpired to the public of them was their conclusion. Monsieur de Lesdiguières was chosen to treat with his old antagonist the Duke of Savoy, and upon his proposing the conquest of the duchy of Milan, upon condition that France should enjoy Savoy, the duke made no difficulty of entering into the king's views. The princes of Germany held an assembly in spite of the emperor, in which they approved the king's proposal for restoring the liberty of the empire. In England his minister met with no less success; and the Italian princes showed a strong inclination to accept the offers that were made them to concur in his design.

As the season of action drew nearer, the king spent a great part of his time in conferences with the duke of Sully at the arsenal, where all was digested that regarded this great expedition, or the settlement of the administration in the king's absence ; but with these there was intermixed another affair that gave the king infinite concern and embarrassment. This was the earnest desire of the queen to be solemnly crowned. Whence this desire arose cannot, with any certainty, be determined ; it is, however, well known that nothing equalled the king's disquiet, more especially after he had given his orders in consequence of the queen's importunity, when the day was fixed.

It is certain that Henry was more distressed and disordered with the thoughts of this coronation than with any thing that had happened to him through his whole life. He went so far as to presage that he should not survive it, and that he should never live to get out of Paris, where he thought himself less safe than at the head of his army ; and yet he could not bring himself to countermand the orders he had given, or resolve not to take a share in that idle pomp of which he had such a dread. The Duke de Sully mentions as a fact, that the king expressly declared to him, he had been forewarned that he should be killed in some public ceremony in a coach, and that it was this circumstance that made him abhor the thoughts of this hated coronation ; this was the reason of his starting and being so much alarmed even at the slightest jolting of the coach, though he had the greatest steadiness and presence of mind in the midst of the most imminent dangers.

On the 12th May, through the importunity of the

queen, proclamation was made that next day, which was Thursday, the queen would be publicly crowned at St. Denis ; the ceremony was accordingly performed by Cardinal Joyeux, with all possible order and magnificence, the queen appearing extremely gay and well pleased. The Sunday following was fixed for her public entry into Paris, for which vast preparations were made, and many triumphal arches erected, with all those circumstances of parade which Henry always despised, and in which the queen delighted. Next morning, which was Friday, the 14th, the king was observed to pray longer than usual ; when he came out of his closet, he sent to the Duke of Sully, to desire he would come and speak with him in the gardens of the Tulleries, but being informed that the duke was ill, and that the person he had sent had found him in the bath, he sent him another message to come to him next morning, but in his night-gown and cap, that he might not catch cold. He conferred in the morning with Villeroi, Nerestan, and d'Escoures, who had been sent to reconnoitre the passes into the duchy of Juliers, and who assured him that they were much better than they had been represented ; which intelligence the king seemed to receive with great satisfaction. He went next to hear mass at the Feuillans, followed by Ravaillac, who confessed his intention to have stabbed him there, but said he was hindered by the Duke de Vendôme. After dinner, the king conversed with the President Jeanin, and Monsieur Anraud, controller of the finances, about the reformations he intended to make after the war was over,—the reduction of the officers employed in the revenue, and the suppressing such taxes as were most burdensome to the people.

After they left him, he grew extremely uneasy, went to a window, and leaning his head upon his arm, was heard to say, in an under tone, " My God, what is this within me that will not suffer me to be quiet ? " About four o'clock he ordered his coach, in which having seated himself, he placed the Duke d'Espernon next him on the right hand; at the boot on that side sat Messieurs de Ravardin and Roqueler; opposite to them sat the Duke de Montbazon and the Marquis de la Force; Monsieur de Liancourt, and the Marquis de Mirabeau sat forwards. The coachman asking whether he was to go, the king answered, " Drive me from hence." Ravaillac followed the coach, intending to have struck him between the two gates, but was hindered by finding the Duke d'Espernon where the king used to sit.

When the coach was without the court of the king's palace, Henry cried, " Drive me to the Cross of Tiroy." When he arrived at that place, he said, " To St. Innocents' churchyard ;" turning into the Rue de la Ferronièrre, which was then a very narrow street, by reason of the shops built against the wall of St. Innocents' churchyard, there was a stop occasioned by two carts, one loaded with wine, the other with hay. The king had before sent away his guards, and ordered the coach to be opened, that he might see the preparations for the queen's entry, intending afterwards to have driven to the arsenal, to discourse with the Duke of Sully on the intelligence he had received from d'Escoures.

The pages who followed the coach went round by the churchyard, except two, one who went before to clear the way, and the other stopped behind to garter up his stockings. Ravaillac took this opportunity,

mounted on the wheel, and with a long knife, which cut with both sides, he struck the king over the Duke d'Espernon's shoulder, while that monarch was listening to a letter the duke was reading. The king, as most writers affirm, said, "I am wounded!" upon which the assassin struck him again with greater force, so that the knife, penetrating into the chest, divided one of the principal arteries, and immediately deprived him of life. Some say that he made a third stroke, and that one of the lords caught it on his arm, but this is liable to great doubt. They were, on the contrary, so little acquainted with how the thing was done, that they did not so much as see the murderer, so that if he had thrown the knife under the coach, he might have passed on; but he stood on the wheel like a statue, with the knife bloody in his hand, till a gentleman, who followed the coach, came up and seized him and was going to put him to death, when the Duke d'Espernon prevented him, crying out, "Save him, on your life!" He then directed that the coach windows should be drawn up, and ordered the coachman to drive back to the Louvre, giving out that the king was wounded, but not dangerously.

As soon as the coach came to the palace, the king was carried into his cabinet and laid upon a bed, where, if we may believe the French historian, Mezeray, he was quickly left by the great, so that those who had a mind to see him met with no interruption, only Monsieur le Grand Bassompierre and the Duke de Guise, instead of going to pay their court, went to weep over their dead master, the Duke de Guise, embracing him passionately. When his body was opened, it appeared that he had two wounds,

one slight, the other mortal; but there is some doubt which was the first or second. All the surgeons and physicians gave it as their opinion, from the soundness of the vital parts, that the king might have lived many years. His entrails were immediately sent to St. Denis, and buried without ceremony; his heart was delivered to the Jesuits, and deposited, according to his desire, in their college at La Fleche, which he had founded; and his body, after being embalmed, was interred with great pomp at St. Denia, on the 29th June, amid the deepest sorrow of the people, and the universal regrets of those foreign nations who wished well to the liberties of Europe, and the Protestant interest.

The motive of Ravaillac no doubt arose from a religious conviction that he should be "doing God service" by the murder of one who had renounced his religion; and we see by this that both Catholic and Calvinist were, in former times, capable of great crimes, when instigated by bigotry and fanaticism; thus forgetting the religion of Him who commanded mankind to "Love one another!"

## GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS, KING OF SWEDEN.



plishments. He was the great northern champion of the Protestant religion ; and in its cause took up arms against the head of the German empire.

After explaining to the states of the kingdom, in a powerful speech, the resolution he had taken to defend the Protestant interest, he negotiated with France, England, and Holland, and then invaded Germany.

Charles I., desirous of the restoration of the Palatinate, agreed to send him six thousand men. The people were more forward than the king. The flower of Gustavus's army, and many of his best officers, by the time he entered Germany, consisted of Scottish

and English adventurers, who thronged over to support the Protestant cause, and to seek renown under the champion of their religion ; so that the conquests even of this illustrious hero may be partly ascribed to British valour and British talent.

Gustavus entered Pomerania, and soon after made himself master of Colberg, Frankfort-on-the-Oder, and several other important places. The Protestant princes, however, were still backward in declaring themselves, lest they should be separately crushed by the imperial power, before the King of Sweden could march to their assistance. In order to put an end to this irresolution, Gustavus summoned the Elector of Brandenburg to declare himself openly in three days ; and on receiving an evasive answer, he marched immediately to Berlin. This spirited conduct had the desired effect ; the gates were thrown open, and the King was received as a friend.

He was soon after joined by the Landgrave of Hesse, and the Elector of Saxony, who being persecuted by the Catholic confederates, put themselves under his protection. He now marched towards Leipsic, where Tilly, the Emperor's general, lay encamped. That experienced commander advanced into the plain of Breitenfeld to meet his antagonist, at the head of thirty thousand veterans. The King's army consisted nearly of an equal number of men ; but the Saxon auxiliaries, being raw and undisciplined, fled at the first onset ; yet did Gustavus, by his superior conduct, and the extraordinary valour of the Swedes, obtain a complete victory over Tilly and the imperialists.

This blow threw Ferdinand into the utmost consternation ; and, if the King of Sweden had marched immediately to Vienna, it is supposed that he could have made himself master of that capital. But it is impossible for human foresight to discern all the advantages that may be reaped from a great stroke of fortune. Hannibal wasted his time at Capua, after the battle of Cannæ, when he might have led his victorious army to Rome ; and Gustavus Adolphus, instead of besieging Vienna, or ravaging the Emperor's hereditary dominions, took a different route, and had the satisfaction of erecting a column on the opposite bank of the Rhine, in order to perpetuate the progress of his arms.

The consequences of the battle of Leipsic, however, were great, nor did Gustavus fail to improve that victory which he had so gloriously earned. He was instantly joined by all the members of the Evangelical union, whom his success had inspired with courage. The measures of the Catholic confederates were utterly disconcerted ; and the King of Sweden made himself master of the whole country, from the Elbe to the Rhine, a space of about ninety leagues, abounding with fortified towns.

The Elector of Saxony, in the meantime, entered Bohemia, and took Prague. Count Tilly was killed in disputing with the Swedes the passage of the Leck, (April 15th, 1632), and Gustavus, who, by that passage, gained immortal honour, soon after reduced Augsburg, and there re-established the Protestant religion. He then marched into Bavaria, where he found the gates of almost every city thrown open on his approach. He entered the capital in triumph,

and there had an opportunity of displaying the liberality of his mind. When pressed to revenge on Munich the cruelties (too horrid to be described) which Tilly had perpetrated at Magdeburg, to give up the city to pillage, and reduce the Elector's magnificent palace to ashes—"No!" replied he; "let us not imitate the barbarity of the Goths, our ancestors, who rendered their memory detestable by abusing the rights of conquest in doing violence to humanity, and destroying the precious monuments of art."

During these transactions, the renowned Wallenstein, who had been for some time in disgrace, but was restored to the chief command, with unlimited powers, soon after the defeat at Leipsic, had recovered Prague and the greater part of Bohemia. Gustavus offered him battle near Nuremberg, but the cautious veteran prudently declined the challenge, and the king was repulsed in the attempt to force his entrenchments. The action lasted for ten hours, during which every regiment in the Swedish army, not excepting the body of reserve, was led on to the attack.

The king's person was in imminent danger, the Austrian cavalry sallying out furiously from their entrenchments on the right and left, when the efforts of the Swedes began to slacken; and a masterly retreat alone could have saved him from a total overthrow. That service was partly performed by an old Scotch colonel of the name of Hepburn, who had resigned his commission in disgust, but was present at the assault. To him Gustavus applied in distress, seeing no officer of equal experience at hand,

and trusting to the colonel's natural generosity of spirit. He was not deceived—Hepburn's pride overcame his resentment. "This," said he (and he persevered in his resolution), "is the last time that ever I will serve so ungrateful a prince!" Elate with the opportunity of gathering fresh laurels, and of exalting himself in the eyes of a master by whom he thought himself injured, he rushed into the midst of the battle, delivered the orders of the King of Sweden to his army, and conducted the retreat with so much order and ability, that the imperialists durst not give him the smallest disturbance.

This severe check, and happy escape from almost inevitable ruin, ought surely to have moderated the ardour of Gustavus, but it had not sufficiently that effect. In marching to the assistance of the Elector of Saxony, he again gave battle to Wallenstein with an inferior force, in the wide plain of Lutzen, and lost his life in a hot engagement, which terminated in the defeat of the imperial army. That engagement was attended with circumstances sufficiently memorable to merit a particular detail.

Soon after the king of Sweden arrived at Naumburg, he learned that Wallenstein had moved his camp from Weissenfels to Lutzen; and although that movement freed him from all necessity of fighting, as it left open his way into Saxony by Degaw, he was keenly stimulated by a desire for battle. He accordingly convened, in his own apartment, his two favourite generals, Bernard, duke of Saxe-Weimar, and Kempenfeldt, ancestor of the celebrated admirals of that name, and desired them to give their opinions freely and without reserve. The youthful and ardent

spirit of the duke, congenial to that of the king, instantly caught fire; and he declared in favour of an engagement. But Kempenfeldt, whose courage was matured by reflection, and chastised by experience, steadily and uniformly dissuaded the king from hazarding an action at that juncture, as contrary to the true principles of military science. "No commander," said he, "ought to encounter an enemy greatly superior to him in strength, unless compelled to do so by some pressing necessity. Now your majesty is neither circumscribed in place, nor in want of provisions, forage, or warlike stores."

Gustavus seemed to acquiesce in the opinion of this able and experienced general; yet he was still ambitious of a new trial in arms with Wallenstein. And being informed, on his nearer approach, that the imperial army had received no alarm, nor the general any intelligence of his motions, he declared his resolution of giving battle to the enemy.

That declaration was received with the strongest demonstrations of applause, and the most lively expressions of joy. At one moment the whole Swedish army made its evolutions, and pointed its course towards the imperial camp. No troops were ever known to advance with such alacrity; but their ardour was damped, and their vigour wasted, before they could reach the camp of their antagonists. By a mistake in computing the distance, they had eight miles to march instead of five, and chiefly through fresh-ploughed lands, the passage of which was difficult beyond description; the miry ground, clinging to the feet and legs of the soldiers, and reaching, in some places, as high as the knee.

Nor were these the only difficulties they had to encounter before they arrived at Lutzen. When they came within two miles of the spot, where they hoped for a speedy termination of all their toils, they found a swamp, over which was a paltry bridge, so narrow that only two men could march over it abreast. In consequence of this new obstacle, it was sunset before the whole Swedish army could clear the pass; and Wallestein, having been by this time informed of the approach of Gustavus, was employed in fortifying his camp, and in taking every other measure for his own safety and the destruction of his enemy that military skill could suggest.

The situation of the king of Sweden was now truly perilous. He saw himself reduced to the necessity of giving battle under the most adverse circumstances, or of incurring the hazard of being routed in attempting a retreat, with the troops fatigued, and almost fainting for want of food. Yet was a retreat thought expedient by some of his generals. But Gustavus, in a tone of decision, thus silenced their arguments:—"I cannot bear to see Wallestein under my beard, without making some trial with him. I long to unearth him," added he, "and to behold with my own eyes how he can acquit himself in the open field."

Conformably to these sentiments, he resolved to give battle, and begin the action two hours before day. But the extreme darkness of the night rendered the execution of the latter part of his plan impracticable; and when morning began to dawn, November 16th, and the sun to dispel the thick fog that had obscured the sky, an unexpected obstacle

presented itself. Across the line, in which the Swedish left wing proposod to advance, was cut a deep ditch too difficult for the troops to pass ; so that the king was obliged to make his whole army move to the right, in order to occupy the ground which lay between the ditch and the hostile camp.

This movement was not made without some trouble, and a considerable loss of time. When he had completed it, Gustavus ordered two hymns to be sung ; and, riding along the lines with a commanding air, he thus harangued his Swedish troops : " My companions and friends ! show the world this day what you really are. Acquit yourselves like disciplined men who have been engaged in service ; observe your orders, and behave intrepidly for your own sakes as well as well as mine. If you so respect yourselves, you will find the blessing of heaven on the point of your swords, and reap deathless honour, the sure and inestimable reward of valour. But if, on the contrary, you give way to fear, and seek self-preservation in flight, then infamy is as certainly your portion, as my disgrace, and your destruction will be the consequence of such conduct."

The king then addressed his German allies, who chiefly composed the second line of his army, lowering the tone of his voice, and relaxing his air of authority : " Friends, officers, and fellow-soldiers," said he, " let me conjure you to behave valiantly this day ; you shall fight not only under me but with me. My blood shall mark the path you ought to pursue. Keep firmly, therefore, within your ranks, and second your leader with courage. If you so act, victory is with all its advantages, which you and your

posterity shall not fail to enjoy. But if you give ground, or fall into disorder, your liberties and lives will become a sacrifice to the enemy."

On the conclusion of these two emphatical speeches, one universal shout of applause saluted the ears of Gustavus. Having disposed his army in order of battle, that warlike monarch now took upon himself, according to custom, the particular command of the right wing, attended by the Duke of Saxe-Lawenberg, Craitham, grand master of the household, a body of English and Scottish gentlemen, and a few domestics. The action soon became general, and was maintained with great obstinacy on both sides. But the veteran Swedish brigades of the first line, though the finest troops in the world, and esteemed invincible, found the passing of certain ditches, which Wallestein had ordered to be hollowed and lined with musketeers, so exceedingly difficult, that their ardour began to abate, and they seemed to pause, when their heroic prince flew to the dangerous station, and, dismounting, snatched a partisan from one of his officers, saying, in an austere tone, accompanied with a stern look:—

"If, after having passed so many rivers, scaled the walls of numberless fortresses, and conquered in various battles, your native intrepidity hath at last deserted you, stand firm, at least, for a few seconds—have yet the courage to behold your master die in a manner worthy of himself!" and he proceeded to cross the ditch.

"Stop, sire! for the sake of heaven cried!" all the soldiers; spare your valuable life! Distrust us not: we will do our duty!"

Satisfied, after such an assurance, that his brave brigades in the centre would not deceive him, Gustavus returned to the head of the right wing, and making his horse spring boldly across the last ditch, set an example of gallantry to his officers and soldiers, which they thought themselves bound to imitate.

Having cast his eye over the enemy's left wing that opposed him, he observed three squadrons of imperial cuirassiers completely clad in steel, and, calling Colonel Stalhaus to him, said, "Stalhaus! charge home these black fellows; for they are the men that will otherwise undo us."

The colonel executed the orders of his royal master with great intrepidity and effect. But in the meantime, about two hours after the commencement of the battle, Gustavus lost his life. He was then fighting, sword in hand, at the head of the Smal-kand cavalry, which closed the right flank of the centre of his army, and is supposed to have outstripped in his ardour the invincible brigades that composed his main body. The Swedes fought like roused lions to revenge the death of their king; many and vigorous were their struggles; and the approach of night alone prevented Kempenfeldt and the Duke of Saxe-Weimar from gaining a decisive victory.

During nine hours did the battle rage with inex-pressible fierceness. No field was ever disputed with greater courage than the plain of Lutzen, where the Swedish infantry not only maintained their ground against a brave and greatly superior army, but broke its force, and almost completed its destruction. Nor could the flight of the Saxons, or the arrival of

Papenheim, one of the ablest generals in the imperial service, with seven thousand fresh combatants, shake the unconquerable firmness of the Swedes.

The death of Gustavus deserves more particular notice. The king first received a ball in his left arm. This wound he disregarded for a time, still pressing on with intrepid valour. The soldiers perceiving their leader to be wounded, expressed their sorrow on that account. "Courage, comrades!" exclaimed he, "the hurt is nothing; let us resume our ardour and maintain the charge." At length, however, when his voice and strength began to fail, he desired the Duke of Saxe-Lawenberg to convey him to some place of safety.

In that instant, as his brave associates were preparing to conduct him out of the scene of action, an imperial cavalier advanced unobserved, and crying aloud, "Long have I sought thee!" shot Gustavus through the body with a pistol ball. But this bold champion did not long enjoy the glory of his daring exploit, for the duke's master of the horse shot him dead, with the vaunting words yet recent on his lips.

Piccolimini's cuirassiers now made a furious attack upon the king's companions. Gustavus was held up on his saddle for some time; but his horse having received a wound in the shoulder, made a frightful plunge, and flung the rider to the earth. His two faithful grooms, though mortally wounded, threw themselves over their master's body; and one gentleman of the bedchamber, who lay on the ground, having cried out, in order to save his sovereign's life, that he was the King of Sweden, was

instantly stabbed to the heart by an imperial cuirassier.

Gustavus being afterwards asked who he was, replied with heroic firmness and magnanimity, "I am the King of Sweden ! and seal with my blood the Protestant religion and the liberties of Germany!" The Imperialists gave him five wounds, and a bullet passed through his head; yet had he strength to exclaim, "My God! my God! Alas, my poor queen ! Alas, my poor queen !" His body was recovered by Stalhaus, in spite of the most vigorous efforts of Piccolimini, who strove to carry it off.





PETER THE GREAT EXPOSING RELIGIOUS FRAUD.

## PETER THE GREAT, CZAR OF RUSSIA.



Few individuals are more deserving the name of Great than Peter of Russia. His greatness did not depend so much upon his success as a conqueror, as upon his exertions for the improvement of his country. In this he was pre-eminently successful, and raised Russia from a state of semi-barbarism to civilization.

Peter was born on the 30th of May, 1672. He was the eldest child of the Czar Alexis Michaelowitsch, by his second wife Natalia Kirilowna. Peter's infancy was beset with dangers; but at a very early period, he discovered a great genius for government; and his elder sister, who endeavoured to wrest the throne from his hands, was discomfited by his superior judgment and ability.

An ancient custom required the sovereigns of Russia to be present at certain festivals of the Greek church, in their most sumptuous habits of ceremony. To one of these Sophia contrived and arranged

that Peter should be invited ; but a few Strelitzes having betrayed her intention of assassinating him, with his wife, mother, and sister, he suddenly left the assembly, and took refuge with them in the monastery of Troizkoi.

At this place he summoned to his aid General Gordon, a Scotchman, who, with all the foreign officers, immediately hastened to him, and he was soon surrounded by numerous friends; Sophia was obliged to take the veil, and ended her days in all the misery consequent upon blighted ambition.

Peter's first great undertaking for the good of his country was to form a naval force ; and being convinced of the truth of the old Russian maxim, that he who would be a smith must work at the forge, he determined to receive practical instruction in his own person ; and he set out on his celebrated journey in April, 1697, for the purpose of obtaining information, both on naval, military, and commercial affairs.

Passing through parts of Germany, he arrived at Amsterdam, where he worked incognito in a Dutch shipyard. From Amsterdam he went to the village of Saardam, where he appeared in the dress of his own country, and caused himself to be enrolled among the workmen under the name of Peter Michaeloff. Here he lived in a little hut for several weeks, a view of which is given at the head of this chapter, made his own bed, and prepared his own food, corresponded with the government at home, and laboured at the same time in ship-building. He

then returned to Amsterdam, and superintended the building of a ship of war, of sixty guns, which he sent to Archangel. Nothing passed him unobserved. He caused everything to be explained to him, and even performed several surgical operations. He then visited London, and here engaged lodgings near the Deptford dockyard, and afterwards took the house of Admiral Benbow. During his stay, he applied himself to the study of naval architecture ; his relaxation at this time was to sail up and down the river, trying the speed and sailing qualifications of boats of different build. His evenings were generally spent at a public-house in Great Tower-street, close to Tower-hill, to smoke his pipe with his Russian friends and English acquaintance.

Peter now returned to Russia, and devoted himself to the improvement of his empire, but with the same attention to simplicity in all his arrangements. He laid the foundation of a new city near the sea, named after him St. Petersburg.

The mansion in which he was accustomed to repose himself, after he had laid the foundations of St. Petersburg, was a wooden cottage. This humble dwelling of a powerful prince, has since been covered by a brick building standing on arches, in order to preserve it as a memorial of its illustrious occupant. The whole stock of royal moveables was confined to a bed, table, compass, a few books and papers. In the shortest days of the winter, which are not more than seven hours in these latitudes, the indefatigable sovereign was prepared for the various and important duties of the day, at four in the morning. It was his usual custom to labour alone

for the public service till the morning light. Sometimes he employed that time, which most of his subjects dedicated to rest, in the consideration and despatch of urgent business with his ministers.

The royal table was always served at one ; and in the choice of his dishes he was not less distinguished from the poorest of his subjects, than by the splendour of his attire. His ordinary food consisted of soup, with sour crout, which the Russians call *chchi*, gruel, lampreys, cold roast meat seasoned, pickled cucumbers, or salted lemons, and pig with sour cream for sauce ; while Limbourg cheese was uncommonly agreeable to his plebeian appetite. But he compensated for this hasty and frugal dinner by such copious draughts of French and Hungarian wines, and of the strong liquors of his country, that his guests might easily perceive that he was not very scrupulous in observing the laws of sobriety. Cast in a mould of uncommon strength, and delighting in violent exercises, one repast could not satisfy the voraciousness of his appetite. To whatever place his various avocations called him, he never forgot to be provided with a sufficient quantity of cold meat.

Instead of those magnificent entertainments of the ancient czars, where the table was oppressed by the weight of the gold and silver plate, the parsimonious emperor established a mess with his ministers, his generals, and favourites, each of whom paid his share, which rarely exceeded the value of a ducat. But if the table was not served with a profusion of costly dishes, there was no economy observed in the distribution of wine.

It was the invariable maxim of the czars to give

their first audience to ambassadors with every circumstance of pomp which might display the greatness of the empire. The unceremonious Peter presented himself to these representatives of their sovereigns, without the smallest attention to any of the rules prescribed by courtly etiquette. It was his constant saying, that they were sent to be introduced to him, and not to his halls or palaces. One instance will be sufficient to shew that in this respect his actions perfectly corresponded with his words.

When the grand marshal and ambassador of the Prussian court, Printz, wished to present his credentials to the conqueror of the renowned Charles—to the ruler of an immense empire, he was conducted on board of an unfinished ship. Unaccustomed to such little ceremony, he demanded to be ushered into the presence of the Russian emperor. The attendants pointed to a man who was actively employed in attaching some ropes to the top of a mast. Peter, for such was the dexterous sailor, on recognizing the ambassador, called on him to ascend the shrouds, but the astonished and stately Prussian pleaded his inability to perform so new and dangerous a task, upon which the alert monarch then instantly descended, and held a conference with him on deck.

The unlimited obedience which Peter exacted from his subjects, had so entirely excluded from his ears every word which militated against duty and homage, that he was accustomed to confound the independence of foreign ministers with the servility of his people, and to expect from their courtesy a similar acquiescence in his caprices. One day, this proficient

in navigation proposed to them an aquatic excursion from St. Petersburg to Cronstadt. The ambassadors assembled in a Dutch packet-boat, which sailed along with its illustrious freight under the guidance of the scientific emperor. Before they had measured half their voyage, a strong wind blew from the west, a slight mist was perceived, and a black cloud gathered at a distance in the horizon. The experience of the royal pilot predicted the approach of a storm, and his nautical judgment was not deceived. Its appearance presently became dreadful, while the vivid glare of lightning, and the tremendous peals of thunder, did not serve to pacify the terrors of the diplomatic crew. One of them, whom we may suppose to be the least familiar with these terrific scenes, conjured the emperor, with every sign of fear, to hasten towards the land. "I beseech your majesty," exclaimed the angry and terrified ambassador, "to return to St. Petersburg or to Peterhoff, which is still nearer, and to remember that the object of my mission to Russia was not to be drowned: for, if I perish here (and the present prospect shews me no other destiny), your majesty must be responsible to my master for the loss of his representative." "Sir," replied the emperor, with an unconsoling and mortifying pleasantry, "if you are drowned, we must all share the same fate, and then none will remain to account to your court for the untimely end of your excellency."

The most elevated station offered no safeguard to the bold tyranny of Peter, who delighted to reduce all his subjects to the same common level of dependence. His general of the police, Difiere, was one

day chosen to accompany him in his two-wheeled open carriage. In their ride, they were obliged to cross a small bridge, the planks of which were so loose and deranged, that they could not pass over it without incurring some danger. This unexpected impediment compelled the emperor to alight; but while the necessary adjustment was making by his dentchtchiks, a shower of blows from the cane of the enraged Peter, admonished his companion to exercise a keener vigilance in the management of his high trust.

It cannot, however, be denied, that the czar was unfeeling, impatient, furious under the influence of passion, and a slave to his own arbitrary will: hence he was shamefully prodigal of the lives of his subjects, and never endeavoured to combine their ease or happiness with his glory and personal greatness. He seemed to think that they were formed solely for his, not he for their, aggrandizement. His savage ferocity turned itself even against his own blood. Alexis (his only son by his first wife) having led an abandoned course of life, and discovered an inclination to obstruct his favourite plan of civilization, he compelled him to sign, in 1718, a solemn renunciation of his right to the crown; and afterwards assembled an extraordinary court, consisting of the principal Russian nobility and clergy, who condemned that unhappy, though seemingly weak and dissolute prince, to suffer death, but without describing the manner in which it should be inflicted. The event, however, took place, and suddenly Alexis was seized with strong convulsions, and expired soon after the dreadful sentence was announced to him; but whe-

ther in consequence of the agony occasioned by such alarming intelligence, or by other means, is uncertain. All that is known is, that Peter then had, by his beloved Catherine, an infant son, who bore his own name, and whom he intended for his successor; and as the birth of this son had probably accelerated the prosecution and increased the severity of the proceedings against Alexia, whom his father had before threatened to disinherit, it is not impossible or improbable that the friends of Catherine might hasten the death of that unfortunate prince, in order to save the court from the odium of his public execution, and the emperor from the excruciating reflections that must have followed such an awful transaction.

The death of the czarowitz, whatever might be its cause, was soon followed by that of young Peter, whom the emperor, on the renunciation of Alexia, had ordered his subjects of all ranks and conditions to acknowledge as lawful heir to the crown, "by oath before the holy altar, upon the holy gospels, kissing the cross."

So great was his distress at this event, that while it lasted Russia remained without a sovereign, the senate without a magistrate, and the army without a chief, to execute the ordinary functions of the state. Catherine, although tenderly alive to the feelings of mother and wife, refused to indulge her grief at the expense of the public interest, and tried every gentle art to gain admittance to her husband. But finding all her former influence absorbed in the vortex of this domestic misfortune, as a last resource she applied to the sage and decisive counsels of Dolgoroukof for

assistance. The senator endeavoured to console her sorrow by the assurance, that on the morrow she should enjoy the satisfaction of beholding the emperor again return to the various and important duties of his vast empire. At an early hour he repaired to the chamber of the disconsolate czar; several loud knocks announced his visit; but the silence which reigned around the forbidden apartment, might have tempted him to believe himself in the mansion of the dead, rather than in the imperial palace of Peterhoff. Determined to break in upon his privacy, he called on this terrible monarch, with an authoritative voice, to open the door; and on his refusal, he threatened to enter his chamber by force. "If," exclaimed the enraged monarch, "I do open it, my first command shall be for you to suffer death for this presumption." But when the door was thrown back, the dignified firmness of this patriotic subject struck a fear into him, which banished all thoughts of his tyrannical intention. "I come," said the intrepid nobleman, "to demand whom we shall nominate as emperor, since you affect to renounce all the duties attached to that exalted station." The conquered czar embraced his friend, and burst into tears. Dolgoroukof seized the favourable moment, conducted him to his joyful empress, and introduced the senate to him, who were graciously invited to dinner, every intention of retirement being henceforth banished from his mind.

The vigorous mind of Peter had invariably laboured to convince his subjects, that superstition does not open the passage to the seat of eternal happiness. He was, therefore, the decided and unforgiving foe to all

those impositions, which were expressly designed to cajole and enflame the superstitious passions of the vulgar. Information had been given to him, that, impelled by the call of fanaticism, crowds of people were collected in the church of St. Petersburg to adore the image of the Virgin, and to witness the sight of her miraculous tears. Ever eager to contribute to the downfall of credulity, so hostile to the progress of true faith, he hastened to the church to detect the fraud in the sight of the deluded people. On his arrival, he commanded this object of popular devotion to be unloosed from the place, in order to undergo his strict and profane examination. In the rites of the Russians, the images are painted on wood. The weeping figure had a double compartment; between the two coverings was a receptacle for oil, terminating in small apertures, near the corners of the eyes. The heat of the burning wax around the image produced the desired effect on the gushing oil, which pursued its course through the secret openings. The skilful and bold hand of Peter, after having successfully demonstrated the mechanism, to the astonishment of the spectators, carried the disgraced saint to his cabinet, to be associated with other curious specimens of art.

The same good sense of Peter, which endeavoured to defend the purity of the Gospel from the contagious breath of superstition, wisely resolved that her timid suggestions should never undermine the foundations of justice. It was the invariable and absurd custom of the ancient czars, whenever their greatness was humbled by the hand of sickness, to order the gates of the prisons to be thrown open to robbers and mur-

derers sentenced to death, under the vain hope that their impious prayers might arrest the stroke of fate. The superstition of the criminal judge wished Peter to follow this example. "What!" said the enlightened prince, in a faint but composed tone of voice, "if God turn a deaf ear to the supplications of my virtuous subjects, can you suppose that my malady will be abated by the liberation and prayers of these assassins? But depart, and let sentence be passed to-morrow on these malefactors; for if anything can incline heaven to avert the impending danger, it will be the execution of their just sentence."

The year 1725 witnessed the close of the life of this extraordinary monarch. Among the various festivals which the superstition of Russia celebrated with peculiar honour, the benediction of the waters may be classed among the most solemn and magnificent. As often as this important day returns, which comes in a season of the year little favourable to those who are afflicted with illness, the priests approached the river with all imaginable pomp, broke the ice, blessed the water, and baptised the infants. All the regiments in the capital paraded in silent order on the ice; nor did it unfrequently happen (such was the severity of the weather on this holy day) that the limbs of the soldiers were frozen. Custom prescribed the attendance of the monarch at this ancient and imposing ceremony. A violent cold was the consequence of Peter's visit, who already laboured under a severe and virulent disease. The heat of his fever increased; and after ten days it had acquired such a fatal ascendancy over his strength, as to baffle all the efforts of medical skill.

He himself felt that the hour was rapidly approaching when he must bid an everlasting adieu to that country, the promotion of whose fame and prosperity was the great incentive to all his labours.

The anguish of his malady at last became so incessant, that he suffered these disconsolate words to escape his lips, "Behold in me how justly man is entitled to the appellation of a miserable animal!" The tortured emperor received the unction which the Greek church administers to the dying ; and it was imagined that the following night would have released him from all his sufferings ; but such was the vigour of his constitution, that he struggled the whole day against the hand of death. The last broken words which he uttered intimated his wish to behold the Princess Anne, the issue of his second marriage, to whom he intended to dictate his last commands. When his daughter arrived he was speechless, and his left side paralysed ; and in the arms of Catherine, whose real or affected love was exemplary during his illness, he expired on the 28th January, 1725, at four o'clock in the morning, in the fifty-second year of his life, and in the forty-third of a most glorious and successful reign.

The body of Peter was carried into the great hall of the palace, followed by all the imperial family, the senate, all persons of the first distinction, and a promiscuous crowd of people. The corpse of their sovereign, adorned with the vain symbols of greatness, was then deposited in the state-chamber, to which all had free access, to kiss that hand which had been so much exerted in his country's honour, until the day of his interment.

## DESTRUCTION OF THE BASTILE.



THE Bastile of Paris, the great state prison of France, was stormed and destroyed by the populace on the 14th of July, 1789. This extraordinary event took place during the sitting of the national assembly, convened by Louis XVI. under great exigency. The French government at that time afforded no security to life or property. Persons offensive to the state were arrested under arbitrary warrants, called *Lettres de Cachet*, consigned to the dungeons of the Bastile, remained there without trial, often for life, and sometimes perished from neglect, or the cruelties incident to imprisonment in the fortress.

Louis XVI. was surrounded by advisers, who insisted on the maintenance of the royal prerogative, in opposition to the growing and loudly expressed desire of the most intelligent men in France. The king refused to yield; and, to crush the popular power, and overawe the national assembly in its deliberations, troops were ordered to approach Paris. At this juncture the assembly addressed the king, praying

the removal of the troops ; he refused, the troops prepared to enter Paris, the people flew to arms, the Bastile was taken, and at last the king himself perished on the scaffold, with several of his family.

In recording the destruction of the Bastile on this day, it is necessary to remark, that on the morning of the day before (the 13th of July), the populace marched in a body to the Hotel des Invalides, with intent to seize the arms deposited there. The governor, M. de Sombreuil, sensible that resistance was vain, opened the gates, and suffered them to carry away the arms and the cannon. At the same time, the curate of the parish church of St. Etienne du Mont, having put himself at the head of his parishioners, invited his neighbours to arm themselves in their own defence, and in support of good order.

By the interception of couriers, the grand plan of hostility against the city was universally known and understood. It was ascertained that Marshal Broglie had accepted the command of the troops ; that he had made dispositions for the blockade of Paris ; and that considerable convoys of artillery had arrived for that purpose. These facts occasioned violent agitation, and eager search for arms, wherever they could be found. Every one flew to the post of danger ; and, without reflection, commenced perilous attacks, seemingly reserved only for military science and cool reflection to achieve with success.

On the 14th, there was a sudden exclamation among the people, "Let us storm the Bastile!" If they had only said, let us attack the Bastile, the immense walls that surrounded the edifice, the broad and deep ditches that prevented approach to its walls, and the

batteries of cannon placed on them, would have at least cooled their resolution. But insensible to the danger and hazard of the assault; all at once, and with one voice, a numerous body of men, among whom were many of the national guards, exclaimed, "Let us storm the Bastile!" and that instant they proceeded towards it, with such arms as they happened to be provided with, and presented themselves before this tremendous fortress, by the great street of St. Anthony. M. de Launay, the governor, perceiving this insurrection, caused a flag of truce to be hung out. Upon this appearance, a detachment of the patriotic guards, with five or six hundred citizens, introduced themselves into the outer court, and the governor, advancing to the draw-bridge, inquired of the people what they wanted. They answered, "Ammunition and arms!" He promised to furnish them, when any persons presented themselves on the part of the Hotel de Ville; meaning by that, from Des Flesselles, Prevot des Marchands. The people, little satisfied with this answer, replied by menaces, threats, and great appearances of violence. De Launay then caused the draw-bridge to be raised, and ordered a discharge of artillery on the persons who by this means he had cut off from the main body, and enclosed within the court. Several soldiers, and a greater number of the citizens, fell, and the cannon fired on the city, threw the neighbourhood into the greatest disorder.

The besiegers, burning to retaliate the loss of their comrades, applied to the districts for reinforcements, sent for the artillery they had just taken from the Invalids, and obtained five pieces of cannon, with six gun-

ners, who offered their services, and brought ammunition for the attack. Two serjeants of the patriotic corps, M. Warguier and Labarthe, at the head of a party of their comrades, supported by a troop of citizens, headed by M. Hulin, whom they had unanimously chosen for their commander, traversed on the side of the Celestins all the passages near the arsenal, and with three pieces of artillery which they brought into the Court des Saltpetres, contiguous to the Bastile, immediately commenced a brisk fire, the besiegers endeavouring to out-do each other in courage and intrepidity. M. Hely, an officer of the regiment of infantry (de la Reine), caused several waggons loaded with straw to be unloaded and set on fire, and by means of the smoke that issued from them, the besieged were prevented from seeing the operations of the besiegers.

The governor, knowing that he could not hold out against an incessant fire on the fortress, and seeing that the chains of the first draw-bridge were carried away by the shot from the besiegers' cannon, again hung out a white flag, as a token of peace. The besiegers, determined to revenge the massacre of their comrades by the perfidy of De Launay, were deaf to all entreaties, and would look at nothing that would lessen their resentment. In vain the governor made a second attempt to pacify the assailants. Through the crevices of the inward draw-bridge he affixed a writing, which a person went in quest of at the hazard of his life. The paper was to this purport : "We have twenty thousand weight of gunpowder, and we will blow up the garrison and all its environs, if you do not accept of our capitulation." The besiegers, despising the

menace, redoubled their firing, and continued their operations with additional vigour.

Numberless spectators of all ages, of all conditions, and many English, were present at this wonderful enterprise; and it is recorded, that a British female, unrestrained by the delicacy of her sex, accepted a lighted match on its being offered to her, and fired one of the cannon against the fortress.

Three pieces of artillery being brought forward to beat down the draw-bridge, the governor demolished the little bridge of passage on the left hand, at the entrance of the fortress; but three persons, named Hely, Hulin, and Maillard, leaped on the bridge, and demanding that the inmost gate should be instantly opened, the besieged obeyed, and the besiegers pushed forward to make good their entrance. The garrison still persisted in a vain resistance. The people massacred all who came in their way, and the victorious standard was soon hoisted from the highest tower. In the mean time, the principal draw-bridge having been let down, a great crowd rushed in at once, and everyone looked out for the governor. Arné, a grenadier, singled him out, seized, and disarmed him, and delivered him up to M. Hulin and Hely. The people tore from his coat the badge of honour; numerous hands were lifted against him; and De Launay threw himself into the arms of M. Templement, and conjured him to protect him from the rage of the populace.

The deputy governor, major, and the captain of the gunners were now united in one group. The horrid dungeons of the fortress were thrown open, never more to be closed; unhappy victims, with hoary locks

and emaciated bodies, were astonished at beholding the light on their release, and shouts of joy and victory resounded through the remotest cells of the Bastile.

The victors formed a kind of march, and while some uttered acclamations of triumph, others vented their passions in threats of revenge against the vanquished. The city militia mixing with the patriotic guards, crowns of laurel, garlands, and ribands, were offered to them by the spectators. The conquerors, proceeding to the Hotel de Ville, were scarcely arrived at the square before that edifice, La Place de Grève, when the multitude called aloud for sudden vengeance on the objects of their resentment. The governor and the other officers were impetuously torn from the hands of their conquerors, and De Launay, with several other victims, perished beneath the weapons of an infuriated populace.

Thus fell the Bastile, after a siege of only three hours. Tumultuous joy prevailed throughout Paris, and the city was illuminated in the evening. By the most experienced military engineers under Louis XIV., it had been deemed impregnable.

---

Such, my young friends, are some of the WONDERS of HISTORY, which are calculated to teach us many important lessons; and I sincerely trust, that the relation of them will be attended with good effect, both to the heads and the hearts of my juvenile readers.

